

2

Volume I

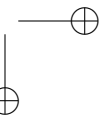
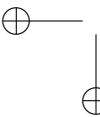
3

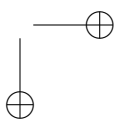
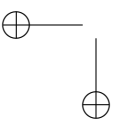
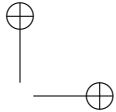
From Pythagoras to Ptolemy

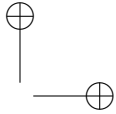
It may have once been the case that all roads lead to Rome, but for most of western philosophy, physical science, and mathematics, all roads lead *from* Greece. This volume is the first stop in our path towards Einstein's Special Relativity: our MOTION themes start with the Greeks, eventually centered on Plato and Aristotle.

4

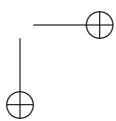
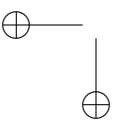
Likewise, but to a lesser degree, ideas about LIGHT frustrated the Greeks without much analysis. This volume will be different from subsequent ones, as its stories are of a number of people, not all of whom would be classified as scientists today. You'll see why. But we'll close this volume with the one of the earliest quantitative astronomers: Claudius Ptolemy.

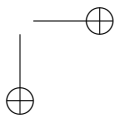
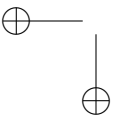
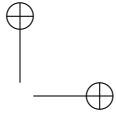
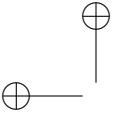






5 Contents





6 Chapter 0

7 Series Preface:

8 Read This!

9 "PREFACE PROBLEM: Nobody reads prefaces.

10 SOLUTION: Call the preface Chapter 1."

11 - **gause11**, *Are Your Lights On?*

12 "Why not just call it Chapter 0?"

13 - Raymond Brock, *...just now*

14 _____

15 0.1 Why Do This?

16 Albert Einstein is usually imagined to be the very model of a modern major scientist.
17 A brave genius, working entirely alone and, yes, it's certainly the case that it would
18 be hard to be more unknown than the 26 year old Einstein. Yet he had an idea that
19 cured a slow-motion nervous breakdown inside of the world's physics community.
20 His Special Theory of Relativity brought two inconsistent theories together by
21 healing a contradiction between them: either James Clerk Maxwell's triumphant
22 model of LIGHT (electromagnetism) or Isaac Newton's mature model of MOTION
23 (mechanics) seemed to be wrong or incomplete.

24 This series, *From the Greeks to Einstein* (let's give it a nickname, "G2E") follows
25 parallel storylines of two very different theoretical clans: MOTION (in which there
26 were three separate families: MOTION IN THE HEAVENS, MOTION BY THE EARTH,
27 and MOTION ON THE EARTH) and LIGHT (where there were also three separate

28 families: OPTICS, ELECTRICITY, and MAGNETISM). Those six different families
29 separately developed, merging into a pair of conflicting theories: MOTION and
30 LIGHT which Einstein tied together.

31 G2E's subtitle, *How the stories of motion and light became the Special Theory of Relativity*,
32 emphasizes the theme of this work: stories. G2E is stories about people.

33 I've been a professional particle physicist for half a century and I've found that I
34 suffer from an unusual affliction that affects my teaching and my research. Before I
35 can teach something old or learn something new, I have to know its history. This
36 isn't an especially efficient way to work but it's led to a fulfilling pastime and I
37 suspect unusual classroom experiences. I've become so sure of this approach that I
38 even tell stories in mathematically intense (calculate! calculate!), advanced graduate
39 physics classes. This series is a written version of my teaching approach, structured
40 around 20 or so scientists, their lives, their times, their colleagues, their projects,
41 and their accomplishments.

42 0.1.1 Projects

43 In trying to reverse-engineer the emergence of innovative ideas in physics, I keep
44 coming back to what *individuals* do. I'm keenly aware that when I choose to spend
45 my limited time and group resources on a project it's both a commitment and an
46 opportunity loss for what I decided *not* to work on. So it's personal and requires
47 experienced scientific taste. For me: the model of the unit of behavior in science is
48 what I'll call the Project which is a lot like how you might think of a project.

There is a more standard, but disappointing "unit of behavior in science" called the
"Paradigm" which came from Thomas Kuhn's historic 1962 *The Structure of Scientific
Revolutions* (kuhn96). When we're working within a paradigm we're doing what
Kuhn called "normal science," which at some point, accumulates contradictions, de-
velops a crisis, a revolution occurs, and a new paradigm begins. Kuhn had trouble
49 clearly explaining what a paradigm was—21 different uses of the word were identified!
For example, is it Big, leading to historic Revolutions? Or could it be small...lots of
paradigms in a scientist's lifetime. It was meant to be a collective world-view, a social
thing, which was *also* a problem as it led to accusations of a distressing relativism in
50 science.

51 I'll be didactic about Projects in my stories. By the way, in Kuhn's formulation, the
52 passage of one paradigm to another is not progressive...just different. That was
53 a problem for his model as, at least for professional scientists, science is certainly
54 progressive and my working model is designed to be.

55 Simply put, each Project has inputs and outputs. In order to get a Project off the
56 ground, one commits to these inputs:

- 57 1. **Numbers.** I'll have a set of factual commitments—numbers or parameters—
58 about phenomena that I'll accept.
- 59 2. **Theories.** I'll commit to a set of theoretical concepts...accepted views of the
60 world, so to speak.
- 61 3. **Techniques.** I'll have a commitment to set of best-practice mathematical and
62 experimental skills and techniques.
- 63 4. **Norms.** I'll inherit and initially commit to a set of community norms and
64 expectations about what Projects are worth exploring.
- 65 5. **Curiosity.** This defines a Project's goals. I'll be curious about some actual or
66 imagined phenomenon. Maybe I just want to measure a parameter or do a
67 "what if" theoretical calculation or build an amusing mathematical model. For
68 the duration of the Project, I'll commit to it.

69 I've called these "commitments" because they are...until they aren't! What I mean
70 is this: if I make a discovery of importance that affects what *other* scientists choose
71 to work on, it usually involves my modification of, abandonment of, or invention
72 of the input commitments that I respected at the outset of my Project. Analyzing
73 those from past —Project to descendent, new Project — is interesting to me. If a
74 Project is well-designed, we can identify each of these five commitments and as a
75 pedagogical tool in our historical approach in G2E, that's exactly what I'll do:

▷ For almost 20 highlighted scientists I'll unpack the commitments (#1 through #4) plus what sparked their curiosity (#5) in their subsequently revolutionary Projects. We'll see how their work went from attention-getting to revolutionary in service to Einstein's eventual Special Theory of Relativity.

76 This approach necessarily brings both history into the stories and encourages a
77 focus on the state of affairs during each person's working life. It also points at
78 collaborators.

79 That Einstein picture of the completely isolated genius? They don't exist in the prac-
80 tice of productive science. There might very well be completely isolated geniuses,
81 but if their isolation is complete they didn't influence anyone! (We'll see a few who
82 only in retrospect were found to have been on the right track, but quiet about it.)

83 You see, an essential aspect of doing productive science is doing public science.
84 Even the well-known "genius" scientists that we can all name had collaborators.
85 They might have had real-time collaborators, or some of them really did work alone
86 in their rooms but they all "collaborated" across time with people who came before
87 them, relying on *their* previous projects to inform the inputs to their Projects. That's

88 where the continuity and progress in science comes from: these real and virtual
89 collaborations. This idea of collaborating with the past is even a little bit romantic
90 which is maybe why physicists and astronomers enjoy the pedagogy of teaching
91 physics so much.

92 But revolutions? They're a slow-walking event. If I'm to persuade you that my
93 focus on unique individuals is helpful I should be able to identify when a revolution
94 occurred. Revolutions aren't overnight, or when someone lays down their pen. The
95 revolutionary nature of a Project reveals itself only in retrospect. Here's how this
96 roughly goes: Someone completes an interesting Project, perhaps having measured
97 surprising new numbers or conceived of a new model or invented a new technique.
98 And if by using those new tools they solve some old problem or predict novel
99 phenomena, then maybe that's attention-getting. But only when enough other
100 scientists vote with their feet—and their precious time and resources— and adopt
101 those new ideas as inputs to *their* Projects then, in retrospect, that original Project
102 might be viewed as having been important—and should *everyone* in a community
103 use those new tools? That's a revolution.

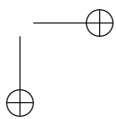
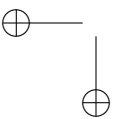
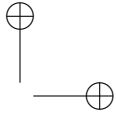
104 Both words in the familiar phrase, "Copernican Revolution" annoy many modern
105 historians. "Copernican" because it singles out an individual as special. "Revolu-
106 tion" because it suggests that there are abrupt changes in the flow of intellectual
107 history. In his *To Explain the World*, (weinberg15) chides (shapin96) for the first
108 line of the latter's *Scientific Revolution*: "There was no such thing as the Scientific
109 Revolution, and this is a book about it." Shapin is one of the voices of a movement
110 that has recoiled against the idea of THE Scientific Revolution and certainly that
111 a single person might be responsible. I've got a different take on this, especially
112 since my career has actually straddled a bonafide revolution stimulated by special
113 individuals, Weinberg, among them.

114 After chastising Shapin, Weinberg closed his introduction to his Copernicus chapter
115 with the comment, "There was a scientific revolution, and the rest of this book is
116 about it."

117 I agree. There have been Revolutionary Scientists *and* there have been Scientific
118 Revolutions and the rest of this series is about them: Claudius Ptolemy, Nicolaus
119 Copernicus, Tycho Brahe, Johannes Kepler, William Gilbert, Galileo Galilei, Rene
120 Descartes, Christiaan Huygens, Isaac Newton, Thomas Young, Michael Faraday,
121 James Clerk Maxwell, James Joule, Albert Michelson, J. J. Thomson, Hendrik Antoon
122 Lorentz, and Albert Einstein.

123 Every chapter follows a similar template. The main bodies have major sections that
124 center on one or two scientists: "A Little Bit About Copernicus" or "A Little Bit
125 About Newton," or Kepler, or Maxwell, and so on. We'll learn about their lives, their

126 contemporaries, and yes, we'll analyze their Projects—what they brought to their
127 work and how they stimulated conceptual change as a result. The last major section
128 will be "Copernicus Today" or "Newton Today" and so on. Each of our physicists
129 left legacies; world-views; and in some cases, even technologies that we still use
130 today. Finally, for many of the chapters there are technical appendices which go
131 deeper into the mathematics than would be welcome in the main narrative of a
132 series like this.



133 **Chapter 1**

134 **It's All Greek To Me :**
135 **The Greeks**

136 "We are all Greeks. Our laws, our literature, our religion, our arts have their root in
137 Greece."

138 - Percy Bysshe Shelley (1792-1822), *poet*

140 "There is a land called Crete, in the midst of the wine-dark sea, a fair, rich land begirt
141 with water; and therein are many men past counting, and ninety cities."

142 - Homer, *The Odyssey*

144 Since this is a book on physics, and since you can only invent something
145 once, I want to tell you how physics started. This is the first of three
146 chapters on Greek philosophy and natural science and they will be
147 different from the ones that follow as I'll talk about many Greeks, rather
148 than focus on a few. In this chapter we'll learn about new habits of
149 mind that evolved two centuries before Plato and drive us still.

150
151 About their nascent science, I'll ask four questions that will guide our
152 whole project: what is the nature of motion by the Earth, what is the
153 nature of motion on the Earth, what is the nature of the motions of the
154 heavens, and what is the nature of light. In the text, you'll know which
155 question is a focus because I'll tag the context with: MOTION or LIGHT.

156 Within each there are more details: MOTION BY THE EARTH, MOTION
157 ON THE EARTH, and MOTION IN THE HEAVENS as well as MAGNETISM,
158 ELECTRICITY, and ELECTROMAGNETISM.¹

159
160 The quotes above are a small sampling of how we modern sci-
161 entists should look back at the Greeks. In many ways my field of particle
162 physics is relentlessly Platonic (but don't tell anyone that I said that!).
163 Plato (and to a lesser extent, Aristotle) continues to challenge us: *What*
164 *can we know?* And, *how* do we know we know that something is true?
165 And, of course, *how* do things move?

166
167 The next chapter will deal with them—but Plato was reacting to
168 the thinkers who came before him, traditionally called "Presocratics,"
169 obviously meant to cover those who came before Socrates. Now,
170 "Presocratics" is an all-purpose label that applies to people before
171 Socrates, but also those who were contemporary to Socrates, and even
172 some who were younger than Socrates. For all practical purposes, it
173 essentially means: pre-Plato and this chapter is about the Presocratics.

174
175 I can identify four Greek Research Programs which still seem
176 modern, but which were really first identified by the Presocratics. Each
177 theme was seeded before Plato and Aristotle and then watered and
178 then harvested. I'll highlight them as we move along. They are:

179
180 **1. Is the universe constructed of fundamental building blocks**
181 **and might those fundamental entities behave together according to**
182 **rules?** This is the nature of physics today: my field of particle physics
183 is dedicated to finding and characterizing the fundamental entities
184 that make up everything else. Quarks and Leptons are those entities.
185 But just stockpiling particles is merely stamp-collecting. They have to
186 interact with one another and so the rules are deeply important. We
187 call them the four fundamental forces today.

188
189 **2. Is the universe inherently mathematical?** It's long been ap-
190 preciated that the universe seems to operate according to rules that
191 are mathematical or can be described as mathematical. Discoveries in
192 physics and mathematics have each influenced the other. Why that
193 relationship exists isn't understood and is yet so persuasive to some
194 theoretical physicists, that they postulate—still— that the universe is

¹This last one requires that we are into the mid 19th century to be relevant. Which is, a part of the story.

195 not just mathematical, but *is mathematics*. I'll have a lot to say about
196 this as it underpins not only MOTION and LIGHT but all of modern science.

197
198 **3. How can we reconcile permanence with change?** This is a
199 tricky issue and one that bedeviled not only the Greeks, but much of
200 philosophy to the present day. Unraveling this tension is intimately
201 connected to theories of knowledge: what can we know and what can
202 we trust? The permanent part of physics today refers to the various
203 "conservation laws"...the Conservation of Energy, for example. But our
204 elementary particles move around, they mix together, they annihilate
205 and are born out of the vacuum. All the time. Change and permanence,
206 agonized over by the Presocratics and Plato, are firmly a part of our
207 modern story.

208
209 **4. How is the Universe structured and what are the rules that**
210 **govern its beginning and current state?** "Cosmology" is the Greek
211 word for this study that mashes together their word *cosmos* for "the
212 world" or "universe," and *logos*, the word for "study of." It's now a
213 modern term and Cosmology is an entire discipline in physics and
214 astronomy. It started with the Greeks and their ideas became, just like
215 motion, mangled by Aristotle's authority. It took 2000 years to get it
216 right.

217
218 The first three Research Programs are fleshed out in this and
219 the next chapter. I'll reserve astronomy for Chapter ?? which is all about
220 Greek cosmology.

221
222 Greeks reveled in drama and it's within the turmoil and blood-
223 shed between the Persian Wars and Alexander the Great that western
224 philosophy and nascent science had its beginnings. So we'll picture
225 this as a play in eight acts. The curtain rises...on a catastrophe.

226

227 I imagine that it started out like any bright day on the northern coast of Crete. A
228 lazy afternoon in this peaceful paradise.

229 Then, total darkness.

230 Without warning, the **loudest sound** ever experienced by humans was followed
231 on the northern horizon by a hint of fire and smoke erupting tens of miles into the
232 previously clear sky. Slowly the sun dimmed, and then the sky became black as

233 six inches of ash fell all over the island like a dirty rain. In fact, debris fell as far as
 234 the whole of modern Turkey, northern Egypt, and the middle east. Following that
 235 sooty deluge, tidal waves fifty feet high engulfed the sea-side areas of Crete and
 236 destroyed everything for kilometers inland.

237 That terrifying –1650 day...

Wait...Negative years? I'm sorry, but in my head the timeline of history is a number
 line with positive and negative numbers—years. Sure, it's a number line without a
 238 zero, but BC or BCE isn't separated from AD, or CE by a year 0 either. The names
 are too clumsy and so I prefer almost-straight-up arithmetic to enumerate years since
 it makes it a breeze to compare one year to another.
 239

240 ...in the capital city of Knossos was the consequence of a massive volcanic eruption
 241 on the island of Santorini, about 100 miles to the north. Look at your map application
 242 and navigate to 36°23'41.46" N 25°23'57.55" E. There you'll see a little Packman-like,
 243 backwards "C" feature in the Aegean Sea. That's the scar—the caldera from the
 244 "Minoan Eruption"—left behind by the opening act in what might have been the
 245 story of us in the West.

246 Our tragic Minoa—modern-day Crete—was a refined culture of master architects,
 247 mariners, and traders, an apparently relaxed and leisure-loving people. Their cities
 248 didn't seem to need much fortification—they seem to be secure among themselves
 249 and were rulers of the sea. They were literate and created the first *symbolic*, written
 250 language—two of them, actually. Their ancestors were pre-Bronze-Age migrants
 251 from the north, seasoned with Egyptian influence from about –3000.

252 Over the next thousand years, Minoans and
 253 Phoenicians became Mediterranean, interna-
 254 tional sea-going powerhouses trading across its
 255 entire breadth. Think about that: 1000 years of
 256 prosperity! Trading partners inclusive of hun-
 257 dreds of different cultures. After the volcano,
 258 they rebuilt but were never the same and were
 259 likely absorbed by a rougher crowd from the
 260 Greek mainland (which is called the "Pelopon-
 261 nese"). The Minoans are our literate ancient scientific ancestors, influencing the
 262 Greek culture even though they ceased to exist.

I like to think of those long-gone cultured Minoans as the polite part of our west-
 ern scientific ancestors—the smart side of the family. But the famously disagreeable,
 Homeric Greeks came from that side of the family that you'd like to hide from your
 friends.

263 That "rougher crowd" were the Mycenaeans who evolved into the heroic Greeks of
 264 Homer's *Iliad*, made perhaps slightly more civilized by their Minoan acquisition.
 265 The centuries following were eventful and then blank: Iron-weapon-wielding
 266 northerners created chaos with the Mycenaeans and eventually initiated a multi-
 267 century dark age. What emerged around –800 included the still-standing Athens,



(a)



(b)

Figure 1.1: (a) The Presocratic and classical Greek colonial empire was vast, although I hesitate to use the word “empire” which implies cohesiveness since Greek colonies were only loosely connected to the mother ship. Eventually, the Egyptian port (to be called), Alexandria became the final storehouse of Greek learning, outside of Baghdad. All of this came at a price. Greeks were almost constantly at war. (b) The regions around Home Base show the eastern Ionian and western Italian Greek cities where the Presocratics lived. The inset in the lower right highlights the island of Santorini, the caldera left from the massive “Minoan Eruption” of approximately -1600 .

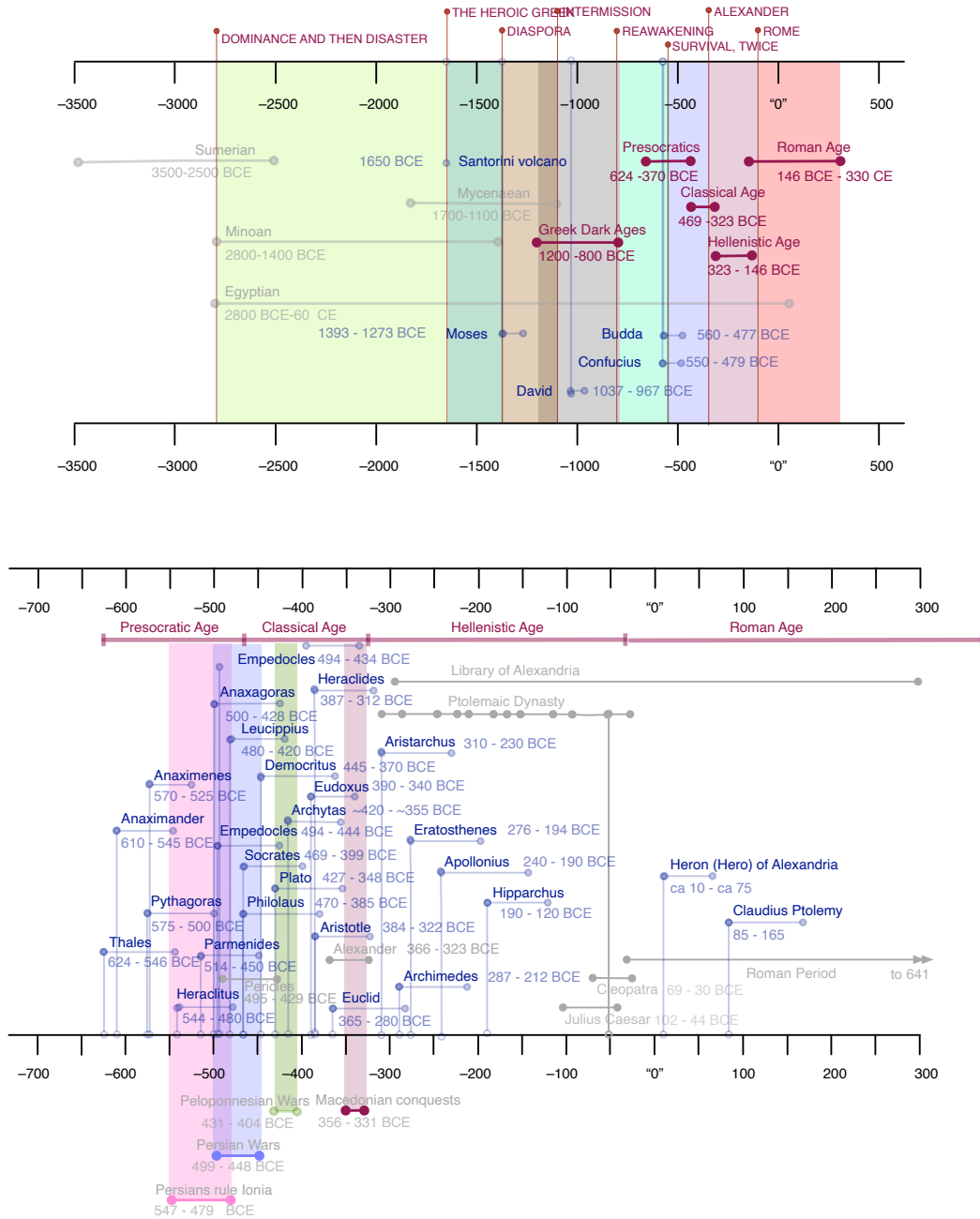


Figure 1.2: On the top, a Mediterranean timeline stretches from pre-biblical times to the end of the Roman empire. The bottom lays out the life spans of all of the Greeks you probably ever heard of...and the overlapping disasters that surrounded their lives.

268 Sparta, and Corinth; the singing and eventual writing of the Homeric sagas; and an
 269 explosive emigrant population prominently on the Aegean islands, western Ionian
 270 shores, and the southern boot of Italy. Established by –650, these colonies were
 271 active traders, especially in Melitus in Ionia. Figure ?? shows the Greek colonial
 272 expanse and details of the immediate Aegean and Italian city-states.

273 1.1 A Little Bit of The Presocratic Greeks

274 Around 2800 years ago a proto-science began by people asking modern-sounding
 275 questions. We'll concern ourselves with our scientific parents: the Milesians (in Io-
 276 nia, on the modern day west coast of Turkey) who invented the idea of substructure
 277 and natural rules, the Pythagoreans (in Italy) who emphasized the fundamental
 278 nature of mathematics, the Eleatics (in Italy) who fleshed out the tension between
 279 change and permanence, and the Pluralists (in Italy and Ionia), who found a rational
 280 alternative to the most persuasive and extreme of the Eleatics.

281 Brief relative (and rare) peace in the Ionian colonies, their positioning in the Mediter-
 282 ranean as a shipping crossroad, and the growth of large city-states led to a period
 283 suitable for growth of a new culture. And this was what emerged: The begin-
 284 ning of western philosophy. The time of the "Presocratics," literally those early
 285 philosophers who came before (or overlapped with) Socrates. These folks and their
 286 "Post-socratics (?)" asked modern-sounding questions of their surroundings.²

287 The timeline in Figure ?? shows roughly three distinct periods with names you
 288 might recognize. There are the Presocratics (from about –600 to about –430), the
 289 classic philosophers (from about –430 to about –250), and then the Hellenistic
 290 philosophers and scientists (from about –250 to +165). Notice that each of these
 291 periods overlap with war: Greeks fighting Persians, Greeks fighting Greeks (after
 292 the Persian wars, an over-confident Athens precipitated a dozen conflicts with
 293 Corinth and Sparta until the major Peloponnesian war), Macedonians fighting
 294 Greeks, and Greeks fighting the rest of the Mediterranean and Middle East. Notice
 295 that the whole of western history since the Magna Carta in 1215 would fit within a
 296 tick mark and a half in that top timeline.

297 1.1.1 ACT I: Is Nature Made From Stuff Governed By Rules?

298 Thales • Anaximander • Anaximenes • Pythagoras • Philolaus
 299 (Set the context with the timeline in Figure ?? on page ??.)

300 Over my career I've published hundreds of scientific articles. Every publication
 301 has a common element: a bibliography with references to dozens or even more

²But the next century would see Ionia ruled by Persian-installed kings and tyrants.

302 than a hundred other scientific works. Science doesn't happen in isolation as we're
303 constantly building on, disputing, or confirming work of other scientists.

304 Take out a piece of blank paper. In many ways what your looking at is the bibliog-
305 raphy of the first western philosopher, or even proto-scientist: **Thales of Miletus**
306 (ca -624 to -547). Plato and Aristotle (and neo-Platonic philosophers who came
307 centuries later) tell stories of him which form a lot of what we know. The fellow
308 who invented history, Herodotus, also is a source.³ Thales left no first-hand writings
309 but stories about him abound.

310 Here's one: my favorite *New Yorker* cartoon is a Robert Weber's 1981 image of
311 professorial-looking, tweedy fellow with pipe on a NYC street corner asking a cop,
312 "Excuse me, Officer. I'm an academic. Where am I?" That image of us academics
313 didn't originate in a fancy magazine. Plato told the story that Thales was walking
314 along looking at the stars and deep in thought and dropped straight into a well that
315 he didn't see in his path. That embarrassment wasn't enough, as Plato also notes
316 that a passing servant girl was on-hand to make fun of him in his reduced state.⁴
317 But we also know that he was savvy enough to predict some weather changes and
318 a possible bumper olive crop so he bought up all of the olive-presses in Miletus,
319 and made a fortune selling them back.⁵

320 Maybe that happened. Here's another. It was suggested by Herodotus that Thales
321 studied in Egypt, learned geometry and astronomy sufficiently to be able to predict
322 an eclipse of the Sun on (our dating) May 28, -585 that pretty much stunned
323 everyone, including causing a battle to pause. How did he do that?

324 Well, he couldn't have. That didn't happen. Available data wouldn't have allowed
325 anyone to make such a prediction. It's trivial *now* to point back to the line of totality
326 (the swath on Earth that would be dark) which would maybe have indeed been
327 over the historical battle site, at that time. But a prediction? No.

328 Determining the veracity of stories like these is an example of a detective-story-
329 approach to unraveling Thales and the other Presocratics: The eclipse fable suggests
330 that Thales might have been an adult in -585 and thought by Herodotus to be a
331 well-enough respected personage that his "predictions" might have mattered. So
332 this story, while fiction, did contribute to the picture of the man called Thales and
333 his reputation and his timeline. Thales was a real person.

334 What's not in dispute is that he initiated, or was a part of, a new way of asking

³Herodotus was the first to tell about the past by trying to justify his assertions and find reasons for events. He's best known for his detailed history of the Greco-Persian Wars.

⁴Plato's references to the Presocratics are often to make fun of them.

⁵He was also an astronomer of note and a mathematician with theorems to his credit. An all-around academic.

335 questions *and* a new standard of what constitutes acceptable answers. Nobody
336 thought like him and his immediate successors, and now we all do.

337 **1.1.1.1 The World Before Thales & Co.**

338 Why does it rain? Why are there earthquakes? Why are some people honest and
339 others not? Why did my crop succeed and yours fail? Why is the Earth suspended
340 under the sky? If you're Greek before about -500, there's a god for that. Why
341 are there clouds? Yup, a god for that too. Why does the Sun shine? Another
342 god. I tried to count all of the Greek gods, titans, minor deities, spirits, sea gods,
343 agricultural gods, "rustic" gods, plus health and sleep gods. Oh, plus almost 30
344 mortals who earned promotion to god-like eternal life. It's hundreds. There is the
345 varsity team—the 12 gods of Olympus and the 12 Titans. But the god-team bench is
346 really deep.

347 Take earthquakes. Currently, Greece ranks fifth or sixth in propensity for seismic
348 activity. So Greeks were used to their ground moving. What everyone knew was
349 that earthquakes happen because Poseidon (the god of the sea) is irritated. Without
350 enough attention, he bangs his trident on the ground from Olympus and they get
351 an earthquake. Or rain. If water falls from the sky it's also the case that another
352 petulant god is unhappy, this time Zeus (the god of a lot, including the weather)
353 using his lightening bolt symbol to make trouble.

354 There's a madness to this, but also a sort of understandable urge to assign every
355 human experience to an outside influence. While Homer's tales include the gods as
356 major actors, it was Homer's contemporary, Hesiod who thought that the history
357 of the gods needed a rational and believable narrative and his *Theogony* is basically
358 the story of the world's origin including the genealogy of the gods. There's also a
359 cosmology in these myths: the gods are themselves born... they've not always been
360 around. And they have lives—outrageous ones.

361 That's interesting. They could have just "been there," outside of time like in other
362 religions, but Greek myth seemed to require a logical, if not fanciful structure:
363 Earth (Gaia) and Sky (Ouranos) were the first and their union is followed by scenes
364 from *Animal House*... no, much worse. Infanticide, incest, fratricide, cannibalism,
365 mutilation, and betrayal follow among the gods and the Titans, and between them
366 and regular humans. Murders are the most light-hearted events in Hesiod's story.

367 The bottom line of Greek mythology is that everything happens for a reason. Why?
368 Because a god is benevolent or unhappy or just doing their job.

369 1.1.1.2 Thales' Science and His Successors

370

GREEK RESEARCH PROGRAM #1 : Thales ushers in the first Greek Research Program, that the world is made of some fundamental substance that behaves according to natural laws.

371

372

373

374 Thales was the first that we know of to take a different approach. He's best known
375 for asking what is the underlying, common structure of the universe, what Aristotle
376 called on his behalf, the First Cause.⁶ Thales reasoned that all of our universe
377 depended on a single substance, and for him that substance is: water. After all,
378 without water or moisture, things perish. Water is in the air and condenses and
379 wets surfaces. It evaporates and reappears, sometimes revealing (creating?) soil
380 underneath. Nothing lives without water and when things die, they become dry.
381 So as a single substance acting as the basis of all things, it's not too bad. This
382 description of the world is **materialistic** and **monist** (the view that there is one
383 underlying substance).

384 This concept is the first of three novel features of Presocratic proto-scientific think-
385 ing.

- 386 1. Thales suggested that humans could understand how the world works, in-
387 cluding what causes the events and things that we experience. His suggestion
388 is that the world is made of fundamental stuff guided by rules—laws of na-
389 ture, so to speak—that govern how that stuff operates. The world needn't be
390 a mystery.
- 391 2. Their "how" commitment searches for naturalistic reasons for events and
392 existence. The previous "why" commitment was satisfied that "a god did
393 it." For the "how" answers, the gods aren't involved. For example, the early
394 Greeks inherited an ancient idea that the Earth is a flat disk with a dome of
395 sky overhead, surrounded by a river (the Ocean or *Okeanos*) and the whole
396 thing is held up by Atlas as a punishment handed out by Zeus. Thales agreed
397 with the geographical part of this cosmology that the disk floats on water but
398 earthquakes happen when the water sloshes. A wildly wrong explanation,
399 but completely naturalistic. Poseidon is not involved.
- 400 3. Finally, the Presocratics jostled with one another: an idea or a research pro-

⁶Aristotle uses that word. But Aristotle was fond of Aristotle's philosophy and his reliance on "Cause" and "Substance" in his own work, motivated his description of the Presocratics' work. Those words were not available to the early Presocratics.

401 gram from one, might be incorporated in another's account. Or, an idea or
 402 research program of one might be a focus of criticism resulting in an alterna-
 403 tive account.

This is not yet science, but science can't happen without at least these three commit-
 404 ments: **we can know about a rules-based universe**, "**how**" **cannot depend on the**
supernatural, and **competition and collaboration are essential** to carry a project
 405 forward. All of this was new and now familiar.

406 Others who came after Thales adopted the same "research program" hypothesizing
 407 and defending an underlying substance for the world. Thales' "A" students, **Anax-**
 408 **imander** (ca -610 to -545) and **Anaximenes** (ca -570 to -525) asked that question
 409 and answered it in different ways, but with the same basic motivation. Each of
 410 them had their own underlying substance idea.

411 Anaximander gave us one of the first maps, perhaps the sundial, and a full cos-
 412 mology including a hockey-puck-like cylindrical Earth floating at the center of the
 413 universe. He watched the stars go around us and concluded that the Earth can't be
 414 falling... so it must be balanced at the center of the cosmos.

Here, is our first reasoned theory of MOTION, in particular MOTION BY THE EARTH. He
 415 concluded that the Earth doesn't move, but for a reason: because of symmetry and
 416 balance.

417 Anaximenes went a step further and realized that what's important is *process*—
 418 things turn into other things. Cycles happen. Lawlike behavior is evident. Neither
 419 Anaximander nor Anaximenes went along with Thales' contention that water could
 420 be the sole source of stuff—how can water be the source of its opposite, fire? That's
 421 not the point, though! They rejected his specifics, but bought into the project: While
 422 Anaximander chose something ethereal and not itself one of the substances (the
 423 spooky "Apeiron"), Anaximenes chose air as the fundamental substance, but he
 424 had a scheme whereby air's various guises could account for the actual things we
 425 experience.

426 By this point, proto-scientific practice is pretty much up and running. They were
 427 naturalists, materialists, and the first Empiricists—using their powers of observation
 428 to study their world and attempt to explain it without recourse to a deity or a dogma.

429 1.1.2 ACT II: Pythagoreans in the West

430 It must be exhausting being a philosopher in your day job while also moonlighting
 431 as a deity and yet **Pythagoras of Samos** (ca -582 to -497) seemed to function as
 432 both, or so his followers asserted. Yes, that Pythagoras: of the triangle, although it's
 433 probably not what you think. What Pythagoras taught and what evolved out of the

434 long Pythagorean school is difficult to parse today so it's not fair to attribute all of
435 "Pythagoreanism" to that one person. The ideas that are attributed to him originated
436 in Italy but evolved considerably becoming a dispersed movement that spread
437 throughout the Hellenic world and beyond to the Renaissance hundreds of years
438 later. Indeed by Plato's time, Pythagoras was already an enigma. As we'll see, Plato
439 probably learned about him through Philolaus of Croton and Archytas of Tarentum,
440 two acknowledged second generation Pythagoreans and mathematicians in their
441 own right. So we have a nearly mythical figure: In the near-term there was Pythago-
442 ras, "so-called Pythagoreans" (as Aristotle called them), and Pythagoreanism. . . the
443 seed-philosophy of mathematics that has lasted in some form to the present day.
444 I'll mostly use the plural "them" rather than the singular, "him." "Pythagoras"
445 is essentially the name of a movement and a culture and unreliably as a single
446 individual.

447 His biographical details are from Roman-era writers and enthusiasts and it's difficult
448 to know what's believable. There's general agreement that he grew up on the
449 Aegean island of Samos and reportedly met the elderly Thales, and maybe studied
450 with both Anaximander and Anaximenes. So suggested Heraclitus, from whom we
451 do have actual written (critical) fragments about Pythagoras. He may have traveled
452 around the Aegean with his merchant-marine father and probably lived in Egypt
453 and maybe Babylon for at least two decades, absorbing language, philosophy, and
454 mathematics. So, a well-traveled, probably comfortable young intellectual. The
455 politics of Samos became tenuous and in spite of the fact that he'd established a
456 following of students, at the age of 40, he relocated to the large Greek city of Croton
457 in the "instep" of the boot of Italy. Some accounts suggest that he was accompanied
458 by a number of loyal followers—the Pied Piper of Samos?—but most suggest that
459 he moved by himself. In Italy he again established a following of reputedly as many
460 as 600 (some say thousands) men and women in Italy and actually wielded some
461 civic influence in Croton, serving as both an advisor and unwelcome busybody. He
462 eventually founded a school that was to last 300 years, twice as long as my own
463 Michigan State University has been around.⁷ The ideas generated from that time
464 evolved and so the border between the man and the movement is impossible to
465 demarcate today.

466 This unusual school also functioned as a mystical, religious cult. Its members were
467 regimented as to how to dress, what they could eat, what they may believe. . . and
468 what secrets they must keep. They loved secrets. Pythagoras was its head and was
469 by legend, supreme, teaching about his remembered past lives and reincarnations.

470 The legendary discovery moment came from thinking deeply about musical tones

⁷But both his and mine are mere babes, as compared with Oxford University, the University of Paris, or the Academy of Plato.

471 which they extrapolated to the proposition that numbers and mathematics are a
 472 fundamental fabric of the universe. Although they were not in competition with the
 473 Ionians, reliance only on a substance-based first principle wasn't sufficient for them.
 474 Rather they believed that their discoveries in mathematics revealed something
 475 fundamental about the world:

476 "All things have form, all things are form; and all forms can be defined by numbers."
 477 Pythagoras

478 "The Pythagorean ... having been brought up in the study of mathematics, thought
 479 that things are numbers ... and that the whole cosmos is a scale and a number."
 480 Aristotle *Metaphysics*

481 1.1.2.1 The Most Durable Discovery in History

482

GREEK RESEARCH PROGRAM #2 : Pythagoras ushers in the second Greek Research
 483 Program, that the world is mathematical. Or even
 that the world is mathematics.

484

485

486 Pythagoras left no writings, but stories/fables/tales reported by dozens of others
 487 abound. He claimed (or it was claimed for him) to have discovered integer relation-
 488 ships among the strings of a lyre⁸ and the pleasant chords it could make. The lyre
 489 was probably a 7-string variety although he reportedly built a one-stringed tool
 490 ("kanon" or "monochord") to study its behavior (although that story is disputed).
 491 A quick taste of what the Pythagoreans left for us (and for Plato!):

492 When you pluck a string, clamped at the ends, you cause the string to vibrate with
 493 a fundamental frequency related to its length (and tension—think, a guitar). Call
 494 that the "ground note." (A Pythagorean scale is different from how a piano is tuned,
 495 but I'll use piano as my analogy.) A piano's middle C is a natural ground note and
 496 has a frequency of 261 Hertz (Hz, are the units for "cycles per second," the number
 497 of repeated ups and downs of a wave). Pressing the lyre string at a half-way point
 498 and then plucking one of the two halves will cause the ground note to be repeated,
 499 but an octave higher. (On the piano, C above middle C is a frequency of 522 Hz,
 500 twice 261 Hz.) Pressing a lyre string at 2/3 of the length and plucking the long
 501 remaining string, causes the fifth above the ground to sound (for the ground of
 502 middle C, that would be G, or 392 Hz, 3/2 of middle C's frequency) and pressing

⁸and the tones from cups filled with different amounts of water which were noted for their pleasing sounds

503 3/4 of the length, a fourth above that (A above middle C at 348 Hz, 4/3 times that
504 of middle C's frequency).

505 Play those intervals on a lyre or chords on a modern piano and your ears will
506 be happy. These are pleasant-sounding combinations while other combinations
507 are not so sweet—we say dissonant. To the Pythagoreans, the difference between
508 pleasant and dissonant was due to the integer ratios of the string lengths—what
509 was important was not the strings, but the *numbers themselves*.⁹

This revealed an **intimate link between numbers and the world**: integer ratios 2/1,
3/2, and 4/3 → to specific lyre string lengths → to pleasing your ear (your soul). This
510 relationship made the numbers 1, 2, 3, and 4 very special to them. Your human well-
511 being, connected to abstract numbers.

512 Lyres had been around for millennia, so surely this particular discovery was not
513 news. But what Pythagoreans did was new. They elevated numbers to a significance
514 that's *beyond just counting*. They **invented the concept of number itself**: from 2
515 oranges to the abstract concept of "2." This direct connection between a few integer
516 numbers, their ratios, and special numbers with important meanings¹⁰ influenced
517 all that's "scientific" up to the present day: A brand new commitment...to an
518 abstraction.

When it comes to Pythagoreans, who did what, when is murky. In the lower time-
line of Figure ?? between Pythagoras and Plato you'll see **Philolaus of Croton** (ca
–470 to –385) who was the first Pythagorean to write about their program, although
only fragments and references from others remain. Much of what Plato and Aristotle
knew probably originated from his writings. (Plato only mentions "Pythagoras" and
"Pythagorean" once each, but Aristotle was more expansive.) Philolaus was a scholar
in his own right and it's hard to discern what ideas were his and what came from
519 Pythagoras himself, or even in Pythagoras' lifetime. What Plato and Aristotle knew
of Pythagoreanism probably came from Philolaus or Archytas, another Pythagorean
known well to Plato^a Highly readable accounts are [ferguson2008](#) and [gerl70](#).

^aAnd, what we know of Philolaus might have come from the Pythagorean, Hippasus. The
most unlucky Pythagorean. He is remembered as having constructed bronze disks whose
thicknesses matched the lyre string ratios. When struck they would then create the same pleasing
sounds as strings. He's also historically the poor guy who found the non-integer problem with
the Pythagorean Theorem. Stay tuned.
520

521 This connection between integers and one's soul seemed to have been just the
522 beginning. They also connected numbers with shapes and so geometry and by

⁹It's a matter of current physiological research to understand why some combinations of tones are
pleasing and others are dissonant.

¹⁰Notwithstanding "42" as the numerical explanation of everything in *Hitchhiker's Guide to the Galaxy*

523 extension, to space itself. Keep them in mind: 1, 2, 3, and 4.

524 What can you do with them? Well, you can add them: $1 + 2 + 3 + 4 = 10$ which is
525 not such a complicated thing, but these are special numbers after all and so their
526 combinations must be special as well: “10” was important.

527 You can also make patterns with numbers—and a highly useful definition of modern
528 mathematics (especially in physics)—is that it’s the process of finding patterns.
529 Figure ?? shows examples of Pythagorean patterns with integer numbers and an
530 important Egyptian application.

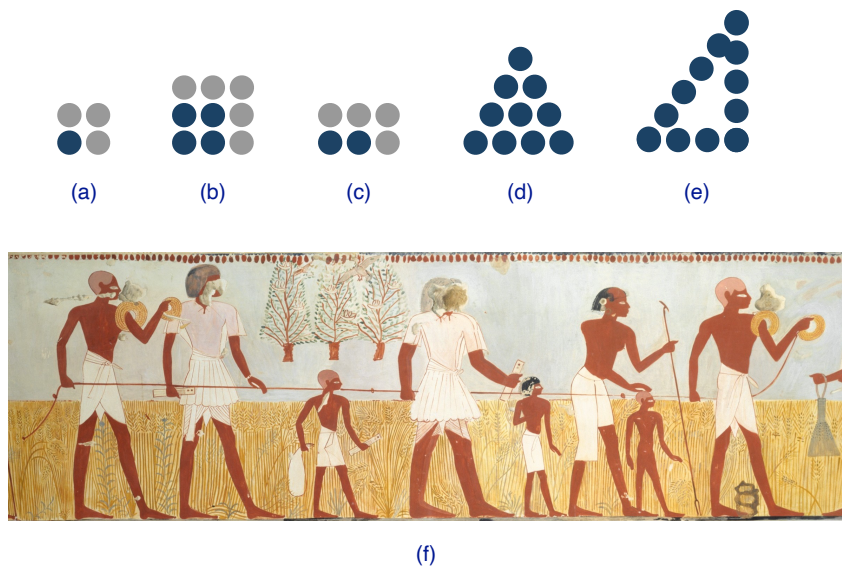


Figure 1.3: Dots represent stones that they would have used to signify numbers—precisely like the dots on dice. The image (f) is from the Tomb of Menna showing Egyptian workers getting ready to do surveying with a knotted rope. See the text for a description.

531 Figure ?? (a) starts with one stone, and adds the first odd number, 3,¹¹ arranged
532 around it turning $1 + 3$ into 4, *but it also laying them out as a pattern in space*. Numbers
533 = geometry for the first time. This is a “square number” which follows the rule (in
534 modern notation) of $1 + 3 = 4 = 2^2$. We can expand this into more square numbers
535 and the next one is in Figure ?? (b) which shows that $1 + 3 + 5 = 9 = 3^2$. One can
536 also take two stones and add the next even number around them in (c), say three
537 above and one to the right, to get a “rectangular number.”

538 Especially important is the arrangement shown in Figure ?? (d). Remember, 1, 2, 3, 4
539 are special. Lay out four stones, then layer three on top, then two, and finally one.
540 You’ve now made a special triangle—the tetraktys (“fourness”)—with 4 stones

¹¹The number 1 was not a number for them: numbers meant a plurality. One is not “odd” nor is it “even.” It’s unique.

541 on each of three sides. So it's an equilateral triangle and all four of the important
542 numbers are contained in it. . . adding to 10. Maybe they liked bowling.¹²

543 There's another connection between numbers and geometry—again, connected with
544 the physical world. "1" was a special number, neither odd nor even (for them) and
545 plays the role of a beginning. The source. A single isolated point is the starting point
546 (no pun intended) for everything. "2" represents a line, which starts with a point
547 and is constructed of points. "3" represents a triangle which delineates a flat plane
548 and is constructed of lines, and "4" represents a tetrahedron, a three-dimensional
549 solid constructed of triangles. That's it. Three dimensions to our physical space
550 is all there is and so "4" represents completion and its encoding in the tetraktys
551 (count the stones in any direction in the tetraktys and you'll count 1, 2, 3, and the
552 base, 4) and that relationship with "10" tied it all together for them. (Of course
553 today multidimensional spaces are a mathematical walk in the park. We know that
554 our physical world consists of at least four dimensions. So stopping at "4" was
555 premature!) There's more. "5" is special as it's the sum of the first even and first
556 odd number. "6" is special since it's both the sum of the first three numbers and
557 simultaneously, the product of the first three numbers. And so it goes.

558 Notice that there's another triangular pattern in Figure ?? (e). If you count the
559 spaces between stones, you'll find that they delineate 3 – 4 – 5 which is a familiar
560 triangle to some of you, but a familiar triangle to thousands of years of Egyptian
561 builders. This triad of numbers has practical value as it's a sure-fire way to make
562 a right angle. Take a length of rope and tie 12 knots equally spaced from end to
563 end. Then have a worker hold one end, another hold the third knot, and a third
564 worker grasp the rope 4 more knots along. If the other end is then given to the first
565 worker. The only way to make each of the three segments taut is for there to be
566 a right angle between the 3 and 4 knot segments. There are other such triads that
567 make a right angle in this way, for example 6 – 8 – 10. The ancient Babylonians
568 and Egyptians knew of many of them and used them in surveying and building
569 without realizing that this was an important thing. Figure ?? (f) is from the Tomb
570 of Menna showing a knotted rope for surveying. As you know from high school,
571 Pythagoreans figured out what this means in an abstract way.

572 There was a mystical quality to numbers and numerology was a thing and so the
573 numbers also had special meanings for things beyond just "quantity." For example,
574 5 is the sum of the first even and odd numbers $2 + 3$ and since 2 symbolized female
575 and 3 male, then 5 symbolized marriage. The first even number is 2 and squared
576 is 4 and so that first square number, 4 symbolized *justice*. Likewise, the first odd

¹²There is a fable that a Pythagorean became ill at an inn while traveling but had no money to compensate the owner for his care while convalescing. The traveler told the owner to hang an image of the tetraktys and other Pythagorean travelers would compensate him far beyond his original costs. And they did. So it goes.

577 number is 3 and its square is 9 and so it also symbolized *justice*. (Even today, we
578 refer to a “square deal” as a proper deal.)

579 In fact, 10 was such an important number that in one version of Pythagoras’ cos-
580 mology we have another early moment of MOTION BY THE EARTH. The Earth and
581 all of the other celestial objects moved around something called the “central fire.”
582 This actually comes from Philolaus:

583 “The first thing fitted together, the one in the center of the sphere, is called the hearth.”
584 Philolaus *Fragment 7*

585 The bodies are, from the inside-out, Earth, Moon, Sun, Venus, Mercury, Mars,
586 Jupiter, Saturn, and the celestial sphere, but... wait. That adds up to 9. It must be 10
587 in order to be right, so they added the “counter-Earth” whose orbital mechanics are
588 such to be perfectly positioned to block our view of the central fire since we don’t
589 see it.

590 “... inasmuch as ten seemed to be the perfect number and to embrace the whole nature
591 of numbers, they asserted that the number of bodies moving through the heavens
592 were ten, and when only nine were visible, for the reason just stated they postulated
593 the counter-earth as the tenth.” Aristotle *Metaphysics*

594 That’s a very modern interpretation of the use of mathematics in physics. You
595 postulate the importance of a principle (“10 is magic”), you create a model of the
596 universe (or some small part of it) built within the model, and then using the
597 basic rules of the model (like arithmetic or something fancier) tweak it while still
598 committing to the model. Here the counter-earth was such a tweak. That’s actually
599 how physicists work within models until they become unwieldy or are ruled out
600 by experiment. I’ll have more to say about a modern day view of Pythagoreanism
601 *Presocratic Greeks, Today* in Section ?? and their cosmology in Chapter ?. It’s a matter
602 of much discussion (a polite way of saying, “argument”) today. It gets worse when
603 we add Plato to the mix.

The connection of music and integers led Pythagoras to assert that the regular har-
monies of the cosmos were everywhere. The planets and stars all move and emit
604 tones that ordinary humans can’t hear since it forms a background to everyday noise.
But Pythagoras? Ah, he’s different. He’s the only human who can hear the Harmonies
of the Spheres. Being a deity has its privileges.
605

606 You’re wondering about that theorem, I know you are. Look at Figure ?? and relive
607 high school for a moment. Notice that Figure ?? (b) is the knot/stones-version of
608 the Egyptian right-angle trick.

609 Maybe you remember the little song for a right-angled triangle: “... the square of
610 the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of squares of the other two sides.”

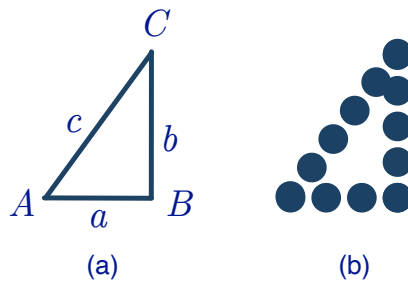


Figure 1.4: In (a) is a modern-day version of drawing a triangle, while in (b) is the same thing but with stones or knots delineating distances. The length c is the hypotenuse.

Or less lyrically,

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2.$$

There's no evidence that Pythagoras first proved this, and in fact, plenty of evidence that it was long known before him. (There are now about a hundred different proofs of the "Pythagorean Theorem." I offer a couple in the Technical Appendix, ??.) The Egyptians had a real estate problem to solve: the Nile overflowed its banks every year and the fertile crop land alongside of it would be covered with water. That meant a problem: once the water receded, whose land was whose? Out of a need, geometry for Egyptians was a necessity. This was another job for the practical $3^2 + 4^2 = 5^2$. But the Babylonians were the champs. Not only did they keep accounting records, they did so in a base-60 number system...which must be 6 times better than our base-10 system, right? We've fragments that showed that they had worked out things like $119^2 + 120^2 = 169^2$ which admittedly doesn't come up every day.

There is a Pythagorean-Theorem story that tells you much of what you need to know about his cult. Remember, integers were the thing and so we feel sorry for the poor guy (historically, maybe Hippasus) who noted that a triangle with legs of 1 would have an hypotenuse that's Pythagorean-impossible since $1^2 + 1^2 = (\sqrt{2})^2$. This $\sqrt{2} = 1.4142135624 \dots$ ¹³ never ends—the definition of an "irrational number"—it goes on forever and so decidedly not one of the mandated integers. Since he'd found a non-integer, for his trouble, as the story goes, he was thrown overboard from a ship in order that his little discovery not be revealed to the other cult members. Maybe this happened.

In the end, as sometimes happens with cults, Pythagoras' welcome in Croton wore out. His house was burned and he escaped, only to die in his escape. . . or not. We don't know. But what he and his colleagues created lived far beyond them.

¹³"dot dot dot," ... is mathematics-speak for "never ends."

625 **1.1.3 ACT III: The Eleatics in the West**

626 Heraclitus •Parmenides •Zeno

627 (Set the context with the timeline in Figure ?? on page ??.)

628 What happened next unsettled the young enterprise of philosophy and, after Plato
 629 and Aristotle, initiated millennia of philosophical controversy. We saw that the
 630 Ionians relied on their senses and took it for granted that events in the world
 631 changed in time. But you and I have both learned that our senses can be tricky
 632 and not always accurate. And, even if we see/hear/feel accurately, the targets
 633 of our perception themselves change. So if that's the case, then what about our
 634 "scientific" observations? Can we trust our senses to gather accurate impressions of
 635 our surroundings and base our theories on those impressions? This investigation
 636 traditionally pits two Presocratics against one another, the "Riddler" of Philosophy,
 637 **Heraclitus of Ephesus** (ca -540 to -480) and the first "Lawyer" of Philosophy,
 638 **Parmenides of Elea** (ca -514 to -450). The former was an Ionian from the big city of
 639 Ephesus, not far from Miletus. The latter, was from the colony of Elea in southern
 640 Italy. Pythagoras' territory.

641 Heraclitus was a loner, while Parmenides evolved a school of philosophy called
 642 the "Eleatics." You might not have heard of that, but you may recognize one
 643 of Parmenides' significant followers: Zeno... of Achilles and the Tortoise fame.
 644 Heraclitus (by himself) and Parmenides and his followers took up the subject of
 645 change. Heraclitus was decidedly on the side of, sure, things change. But he
 646 took it in an abstract direction. On the other side, Parmenides concluded that
 647 change is an illusion. He even *proved* that change is an illusion. At first glance, that
 648 seems strange, but his novel method of philosophizing was persuasive and as a
 649 consequence he created two branches of philosophy. And in the course of digging
 650 into the problematic nature of Change, set off a huge argument over centuries.
 651 Obviously, this is prior to any kind of physics-like analysis of MOTION!

652

GREEK RESEARCH PROGRAM #3a : The Problem: Tension between Change versus
 653 Permanence begins with Heraclitus and Parmenides.

654

655

656 **1.1.3.1 The Riddler**

657 Although we know few details of Heraclitus' life, he was apparently prominent in
 658 Ephesus. His father was said to have been an aristocrat, but Ionia was under Persian

659 control during his life and suggestions that Heraclitus might consider a political
 660 life might be hard to picture. He wasn't a people-person. He would have been a
 661 child when Anaximenes died but he was critical of the Milesians and scathing in his
 662 criticism of his contemporary, Pythagoras. About 100 fragments of Heraclitus' work
 663 remain showing that his style was... unusual. He wrote very short tweets which
 664 have puzzled and delighted readers for thousands of years.

665 He was a monist as well: fire was his fundamental substance. And as interpreted
 666 by one of his aphorisms, he had a cosmology,

667 "This world-order [*kosmos*], the same of all, no god nor man did create, but it ever
 668 was and is and will be: everliving fire, kindling in measures and being quenched in
 669 measures." Heraclitus

670 This is the first time that the word "cosmos" appears in Greek philosophy and he's
 671 clearly insisting that the cosmos always was the case and always will be the case.
 672 That's interesting since Plato deliberately labeled him inaccurately as naively saying
 673 that "everything changes" and that nothing is permanent.

674 You and I think of MOTION ON THE EARTH as moving from one place to another
 675 during some time, right? Remember, the Greeks were just beginning to do this
 676 analysis and moving from place to place was not their primary concern. Change
 677 by itself was and Heraclitus was the first to abstract *any* change as basically a form
 678 of motion, seeming to assert that universal "flux" was an important feature in the
 679 world.

680 "It is not possible to step twice into the same river." Heraclitus

681 This is a famous paraphrase of a translation of his most famous of three "river
 682 aphorisms," The idea is that the river is always flowing and if you step into "the
 683 river" once, and then step into it a second time, it's a different river. So two rivers
 684 sort of functioning at the same time. It's a little different from this one:¹⁴

685 "As the same thing in us are living and dead, waking and sleeping, young and old.
 686 For these things having changed around are those, and those in turn having changed
 687 around are these." Heraclitus

688 A young person is connected to their older self through the changes that they
 689 undergo. A is different from B, but linked because *A changes into B*. But, living
 690 and dead? This is a deep idea and seems to suggest that A and its opposite, B, are
 691 actually the same thing. In fact Change here has a job: it's a sort of glue that links
 692 together different things or different aspects of a thing. So apparent opposites are
 693 connected meaning that everything in the world is connected. One.

¹⁴While the most famous Heraclitus aphorism, there are at least three versions of it and some dispute as to its overall authenticity.

694 Plato used Heraclitus as a punching bag and said that connecting opposites like
 695 Heraclitus suggests gives us logical contradictions. Plato had an agenda. Aristotle
 696 was a little more forgiving and we'll see how he codified and categorized change,
 697 which will explicitly include our notion of loco-motion. But it seems that he had to
 698 go through Heraclitus to get there.

699 It's easy to be amused by Heraclitus' words, and for millennia, that's been a sport
 700 and I have more for you in *Presocratic Greeks, Today* in Section ?? below.

701 1.1.3.2 Nothing Gets Done: The Parmenides Problem

702 Parmenides took the extreme, opposite position, probably writing after Heraclitus.
 703 His argumentation is tightly logical so much so that it's possible to be swayed by
 704 the apparent inevitability of his arguments. If you can penetrate the denseness of it.
 705 I'll call his oddly persuasive but troubling conclusions the **Parmenides Problem**. It
 706 will seem to us like the Parmenides Problem will not go away.

707 He is the first in a long line of philosophers of both Metaphysics (the philosophy of
 708 the nature of being) and Epistemology (the philosophy of knowledge). He wrote
 709 a single book in verse (and according to Aristotle, not very well). It's a narrative
 710 story about his meeting with a goddess and how she teaches him about two kinds
 711 of knowledge.

712 There is the "first path" to knowledge: knowledge that is true by necessity. This
 713 "Way of Truth" is confined to your reasoning, not your senses. The second path
 714 to knowledge, that of perception, is "habit" and from "your heedless eye." This
 715 "Way of Seeming" is needed in order to get along in the world, but you can't trust
 716 it because you can be fooled. For that reason the "Way of Seeming" can't tell you
 717 what is true. So:

▷ **The Parmenides Problem:** True means permanent. So, anything that changes cannot be true.

718 Remember our own experiences: our senses can fool us and the objects of our
 719 perceptions can evolve between observations. What can you trust in the world
 720 if not your eyes? So he got rid of both issues. Truth can only refer to permanent
 721 things.

722 Accepting his premises, his logic seems oddly persuasive. In a nutshell, which could
 723 be on a T-shirt, I can sum up Parmenides in his two words (read it carefully... if
 724 nobody's around maybe even read this out loud): "**It is.**" It's punchy. He also then
 725 reasons that "**It is and it cannot, not be.**" *It cannot... not be.* If something **is**, it can't
 726 be **not-is** at the same time. Further, if something **exists**, then **it is**. Consequently, if
 727 it **doesn't exist**, then it is **not-is**. So knowing what **is**, is to know what **exists**. So far,

728 so good. Something can't exist and not exist simultaneously. (Can you see how this
729 is against Heraclitus, who seemed to welcome *A* and not-*A* simultaneously?)

730 He goes further. If something exists (it **is**) then also it could never have been
731 different in the past, nor will it be different in the future. For if it came into existence
732 as **is**, then before that event it must have been: **not-is**. It changed. If it changes into
733 something else in the future, then it goes from being **is** to then being **not-is**. How
734 can something at one time be **not-is** and at another time be **is**? That can't happen!
735 So if something **is**, it's always been **is**. In some sense, then the past and the present
736 are one. Whew. Are you with me?

737 He's staked out clever ground in two new ways: His approach seems so logical that
738 it launched philosophical analysis as an appropriate way to make arguments. And,
739 he's defined what it is to be real: what's real must be true and therefore, it must be
740 unchanging. The only place where truth can be realized is in your head. Where you
741 reason.

742 Parmenides' sidekicks ran with this. Zeno took his arguments to the extreme and
743 that's our connection with MOTION. Maybe you remember the story of how Achilles
744 couldn't beat a tortoise in a race?

This is one of 10 of "Zeno's Paradoxes," **The Achilles**. Achilles, being the fastest
human, is to race a tortoise, maybe the slowest animal, so he gives the tortoise a
head start, halfway to the finish line. They both start but poor Achilles is faced with
an impossible task. In order to traverse half of the distance to the tortoise's starting
point, he has to traverse half of that half. Then half again of *that* half. In fact he needs
745 to travel through an infinite number of paths, which is impossible so he can't catch
the tortoise! There are three other paradoxes on motion (The Dichotomy, The Arrow
and The Stadium), all designed to support Parmenidean conclusions about motion. In
Technical Appendix ?? I explain how we think of Zeno's paradoxes today as...well, not
paradoxical.
746

747 Zeno gets this from Parmenides and since the reasoning seemed to be impenetrable,
748 with an apparent gloss of a mathematical sheen lending a seeming validity, all of
749 those races that you've seen with your lyin' eyes were apparently fooling you. I
750 touch on two others in *Zeno and His Paradoxes*, Section ?? below.

We've now encountered examples of significant philosophical or scientific commitments. Sides were beginning to be drawn in natural philosophy that continue to this day: Can knowledge about the world be gained by thinking? Or must knowledge come from observation. The former is called Rationalism and the latter, Empiricism and physicists still argue about this. Clearly Pythagoras is in the first camp and so was Parmenides—distrust of the senses disqualified observation as a source of truth. And, geometrical argument seems like a good example of what must be true. The Ionians pioneered the second camp gleaned knowledge and theories about the universe by looking and hypothesizing from their observations.

Finally, the void. The vacuum. A state of actual nothing! By now you can imagine what Parmenides thinks of such an idea: it's impossible since it's the state of **non-being**. Another Eleatic, Melissus took this to the ultimate conclusion without the need of Zeno-like paradoxes. Just logic: anything that **is** cannot move since it would need a place to move to— it would need an open space where **nothing is** in order to relocate. But a place where **nothing is**... is nothing. But nothing can't be the case so there is no motion. Another MOTION problem.

Parmenides was the first to seriously question what can be known and by what means. Your senses deceive you all the time and so you can't depend on your observations for truth. But at the same time, your rational, logical thought—an argument assembled before Aristotle invented the actual rules of logic—is dependable. He then laid out a dispassionate argument that leaves one wondering what in the world is wrong with it.

How do we get around this? In order to do science, or frankly, to live, one has to be able to hold a tentative, hypothetical idea in your head, but less than "True." But Parmenides was worried about that Truth with a capital "T" and so he couldn't abide an idea that is not true or even tentative as a stand-in for what's true and so his philosophy was sterile. Scientists don't deal in that kind of truth.

Well, this is embarrassing. My project here is an account of MOTION and now we've just encountered what seems to be a persuasive argument that MOTION is impossible. That's not progress, is it.

The Parmenides Problem is an important stepping-off point for Plato.

1.1.4 ACT IV: Antidotes to Parmenides?

Empedocles • Anaxagoras • Leucippus • Democritus
(Set the context with the timeline in Figure ?? on page ??.)

Parmenides' arguments were unsettling. The notion of a tightly logical argument was brand new, and yet even if its conclusions seemed nonsensical, you've got to

777 struggle to find holes in his reasoning. But that didn't stop four intrepid souls. We
 778 still call them "Presocratics" but really they were "Co-socratics" (I made that up)
 779 since they all lived around the time of Plato's mentor. They're our last stop before
 780 Plato.

781

782 **GREEK RESEARCH PROGRAM #3b :** Attempts at solutions: Back to Monism for solu-
 tions to the Parmenides Problem?

783

784

785 1.1.4.1 Empedocles and Anaxagoras

786 One philosophical god was apparently not enough. **Empedocles of Sicily** (–494
 787 to maybe –434) was another self-appointed deity. He was a contemporary to the
 788 Ionian, **Anaxagoras of Ionia** (–500 to maybe –428) who had a similar solution to
 789 the Parmenides Problem. Both took the position that the world is made of multiple
 790 entities and that *those* entities are what's permanent, but their *combinations* are
 791 multitude and accommodate change. In some ways, a modern approach.

792 Empedocles was a character. Legend has it that he dressed in a purple robe, with
 793 wreaths around his neck. He claimed to have performed miracles, raising folks
 794 from the dead, curing illness, and so on and he claimed to have been reincarnated
 795 from previous lives as a bird, a fish, a girl, a bush (really? shrubbery?) ... His
 796 brand was very Pythagorean he lived and worked in that same region of the Greek
 797 confederacy as the still functioning Pythagorean society, so there might have been
 798 some influence. He famously wore bronze-soled shoes everywhere. They figure
 799 into his legendary ascendance at the end. He was supposed to have leaped into the
 800 active volcano at Etna and disappeared but one of those distinctive shoes was left
 801 behind casting doubt on that last miracle. It seemed that the volcano spit the sandal
 802 out after consuming him. These stories come two centuries after his lifetime.

803 We only have fragments from Empedocles who wrote in verse, as seemed to be the
 804 custom in the west. It is from him that we get the familiar **Earth, Air, Fire, and Water**
 805 as basic elements (he called them "roots"). We will see that Plato and Aristotle
 806 took hold of this idea and ran with it all the way to Galileo's time. These four
 807 roots accommodate change by mixing with one another driven by two opposing
 808 forces, "Love" and "Strife." Again, a simplistic but modern-sounding notion of
 809 fundamental forces acting on the basic constituents of matter.

810 This is inspired. The roots are indivisible and have always existed, as have the two
 811 "forces" of Love (an attractive force) and Strife (a repulsive force). He also agreed

812 that no-thing can come from nothing. So, we can check off both the Parmenides
 813 permanence and not-nothing boxes. But he also accommodates our senses, while
 814 warning of their fragility. What we observe is that things in our world are different
 815 from one another and that there are many of them. Some rocks are hard and some
 816 rocks are brittle. They're both rocks, so how do we build our observed rocks with
 817 only four roots?

▷ Empedocles contribution was that everything we observe is constructed
 of varying *proportions of the root elements*.

818 All rocks might be made of the same combinations of the roots, but a hard rock
 819 would have more of the Earth root than the brittle rock. With infinitely mixing
 820 proportions of the four roots, you can make the variety of the world. Sounds a little
 821 like a proto-chemistry.

822 Empedocles insisted that there was no purpose to the universe and that we're all
 823 subject to chance, postulating that we actually live in an undulating, repetitive cycle
 824 of a spherical universe in which Love and Strife compete for dominance.

825 His contemporary, Anaxagoras was from the other side of the West-East divide.
 826 He was an Ionian who ended up in Athens, establishing the first of a long string
 827 of Athenian philosophers. His arrival came during the classical period when the
 828 architecture; sculpture; literature; and yes, philosophy that we think of when we
 829 think "Greek" began.

830 Rather than only four substances, Anaxagoras presumes as many elements as
 831 there are things. Things... are themselves infinitely divisible. How do you acquire
 832 hair and bones? Well you eat foods that contain elements of... hair and bones.
 833 Everything is in everything. He insisted that the senses give us a window or a
 834 picture into aspects of reality that are not directly observable, but nonetheless,
 835 existing. Again, another modern idea from one of our "Co-socratics."

836 Notice that neither of our two characters explicitly address the issue of locomotion.
 837 This is a confusion that Aristotle promulgates, as we'll see. "Change" *per se* is
 838 broader than a thing moving from one place at one time to another place at a later
 839 time. So as you'll see in *Zeno and His Paradoxes*, Section ?? while Zeno works on
 840 that problem, he starts with the presumption that change is not possible and so by
 841 extension locomotion is impossible and hence the paradoxes try to persuade you of
 842 that. Our next two "Co-socratics" do find a way to explain locomotion which again,
 843 Aristotle rejects out of hand.

844 **1.1.4.2 Atoms**

845 I'll bet that you first learned the origin of the word "atom" in elementary school.
 846 "*Atomon*" is Greek for indivisible and the origin of that idea was again, the anxious
 847 need to find a way around the Parmenides Problem. You probably also learned that
 848 the inventor of atomism was **Democritus of Abdera** (about -445 to -370), originally
 849 from a region that's closer to Macedonia than it is to Athens, so a northerner. Here
 850 are three interesting things about Democritus. First, we classify him as a Presocratic,
 851 but that's really a misnomer. He's a "Post-socratic," younger than Socrates by more
 852 than 20 years. Secondly, he didn't invent the idea of atoms. He inherited it from
 853 **Leucippus of Miletus** (about -480 to -420). Finally, Plato doesn't mention him!
 854 He apparently burned Democritus' books. Aristotle knew him very well, maybe
 855 because of their shared northern roots.

856 Obviously, the idea of atoms is one with legs, albeit with ups and downs over the
 857 next two millennia, usually, unwelcome and only accepted when Einstein found
 858 two ways to demonstrate that there are indeed invisible chunks of matter. (That's a
 859 story that's not our current Einstein focus, but a large part of his miraculous 1905
 860 year.)

861 However, the atoms (typically a mixture of Leucippus and Democritus' contribu-
 862 tions) of classical Greece and our idea of atoms are very different. First, there are an
 863 infinite number of Greek atoms of all possible shapes. Some have hooks and can
 864 attach to others (think velcro), while some pairs have shapes that fit together. They
 865 move around and bounce off of one another, or they cling to one another forming
 866 compounds that eventually become the substances that we're familiar with. We
 867 know of them because of the sensible qualities that they bring to objects we can
 868 deal with using... our senses. For example, things that taste sweet are composed of
 869 smooth atoms while things that are acidic are composed of sharp-edged, angular
 870 atoms.

871 How is this an antidote for the Parmenides Problem? First, the atoms are permanent
 872 but second they are constantly in motion and all change is due to their arrangements,
 873 and re-arrangements.

874 But the real way in which this works is that both atomists insist that what's real
 875 are atoms... *and the void*. The void is the place where moving things can go *to*. So
 876 locomotion is possible. There. That does it for Parmenides. So, the atomists are
 877 happy to make room (so to speak) for MOTION ON THE EARTH.

878 The void is an unpopular idea, and to this day we continually redefine what the vacuum
 is (or isn't). Our current understanding, again, my scientific playground, is that there is
 no place in the universe where there is nothing. The vacuum is full, but it's a quantum
 mechanical fullness that has no connection to any ideas before about 1950.

879

880 But, as I said, Plato ignored this singular, logical conclusion to the Parmenides
881 Problem, which seems a cowardly way of dealing with an idea. As we'll see,
882 Aristotle could not abide the void so he's no atomist either.

883 There's one more interesting fact about this pair's ideas and that's an idea that
884 Plato would embrace, but with only partial credit to the right people. Everyday
885 objects are not real things, and the attributes that we ascribe to visible, touchable,
886 tasty, smelly, and loud objects of our sensible world are all based on convention.
887 Democritus wrote:

888 "By convention sweet and by convention bitter, by convention hot, by convention
889 cold, by convention color; but in reality atoms and void." Democritus

890 Even though we can't see atoms, we know they're there because our minds tell us
891 about what we can't see. A reality that's beyond our senses. Now this is a very
892 modern idea and also a very Plato-idea and we'll see it emerge in a slightly different
893 guise when we talk about Galileo and how he invented physics when he used this
894 notion—now labeled "Platonic," but could be labeled Democritus-ian.

895 1.1.5 What's Important For Our Project

896 Our project is about MOTION and LIGHT. Does it make any sense to speak of either
897 of them without numbers? MOTION implies speed (to us), immediately bringing
898 to mind numbers: miles per hour, for example. LIGHT involves brightness, color,
899 reflection and refraction. . . qualities that we can describe using words, but they're
900 a stand-in for actual numbers as well: you'd evaluate a lightbulb's brightness by
901 "lumens" and its color by "Kelvin" which are numbers. "Red" is a name for a
902 particular frequency of light.

903 This is so much a part of our thinking now, that it almost seems trivial to mention it.
904 Wouldn't it seem odd to think in any other way for almost everything, from cooking
905 to taking a pain reliever to deciding when to buy new tires? Attaching numbers to
906 the physical world is a gift of the Presocratics and in particular, the Pythagoreans.
907 Trivial or not, before the Pythagoreans, numbers as more than just counting would
908 have been a foreign concept, after them, well, numbers are *in* everything.

909 But their gifts were generous beyond just this. Lets quickly summarize what the
910 Pre-, Co-, and Post-socratics have brought to the scientific table.

911 The invention of the scientific commitments that we use today came from them:

- 912 1. They eliminated the supernatural as an acceptable argument for why things
913 in the world happen. We can know about the physical world.

- 914 2. They conceived of the notion that the universe is made of naturalistic stuff: the
 915 water, aperiodon, air first-guesses, to more intricate and even modern-sounding
 916 permanent entities that go together in proportions to build the stuff we expe-
 917 rience.
- 918 (a) They toyed with the idea that these entities had to obey rules that allowed
 919 for their interactions, and in some cases, motions.
- 920 3. They invented the notion that mathematics is tied both to geometry and to
 921 things in the world, essentially birthing modern mathematics. We literally
 922 have no other way to describe and predict the properties and behavior of the
 923 physics world.
- 924 4. Some Greeks realized that learning about the universe involved seeing, touch-
 925 ing, and hearing what the universe of things does. But others noted that our
 926 senses are unreliable and so couldn't reliably deliver truth, if "truth" meant
 927 "permanent," setting up the problematic notion of Change. Taking a page
 928 from their high school geometry class, mathematics was a pretty good model
 929 of what is constant and true. But we only can deal with geometrical objects
 930 through reason. So: don't look at the world, *think* about the world. That's
 931 what I've called the Parmenides Problem: is change in the world an illusion?
- 932 5. Reactions to the Parmenides Problem led to at least two directions: primary
 933 substances mixed in proportion, Earth, Water, Air, and Fire... or atoms. It
 934 also confused everyone that followed and heavily motivated Plato and in a
 935 different way, Aristotle.
- 936 And, proto-science, and now science as we know it, is a social activity.
- 937 6. They argued. One philosopher added to or reacted to what another said. This
 938 created the necessary social structure and behavior necessary to support the
 939 scientific enterprise.

940 We're now ready for Plato.

941 1.2 Presocratic Greeks, Today

942 1.2.1 Tweeting With Heraclitus

943 Heraclitus is challenging because he's tough to analyze and because the available
 944 material is... pithy. The general view is that he really did write in these short
 945 aphorisms and that they aren't somehow surviving snippets of something larger.

946 The most famous of them, that tends to support his historical brand that "everything
 947 changes" is the River Analogy. The most famous version is due to Plato's rendition
 948 which he wrote in *Cratylus*:

949 "Heraclitus, I believe, says that all things pass and nothing stays, and comparing
950 existing things to the flow of a river, he says you could not step twice into the same
951 river." Plato

952 But there are actually three versions of the river tweet:

953 "On those stepping into rivers staying the same other and other waters flow." *Cleanthes*,
954 a Greek Stoic from two centuries after Heraclitus' life and almost a contemporary of
955 Plato

956 "Into the same rivers we step and do not step, we are and are not." *Heraclitus Homericus*,
957 a commentator from 500 years after Heraclitus' life

958 "It is not possible to step twice into the same river according to Heraclitus, or to
959 come into contact twice with a mortal being in the same state." Plutarch, from the
960 Renaissance

961 The first is probably the most likely and doesn't contradict the more popular version.
962 However, this story illustrates the difficulty, once again, of the detective work
963 involved in assigning credit (or blame) to the Presocratics.

964 I mentioned that he wasn't a people-person, probably unsuited for political leader-
965 ship (notice the disdain for his Italian contemporary, Pythagoras):

966 "One is worth ten thousand to me, if he is the best."

967 "Eyes and ears are poor witnesses to people if they have uncultured souls."

968 "War is the mother of everything."

969 "The best of men choose one thing in preference to all else, immortal glory in prefer-
970 ence to mortal good; whereas the masses simply glut themselves like cattle."

971 "It is not good for men to get all that they wish to get."

972 "What sense or thought do they have? They follow the popular singers, and they take
973 the crowd as their teacher."

974 "Learning many things does not teach understanding. Else it would have taught
975 Hesiod and Pythagoras, as well as Xenophanes and Hecataeus."

976 "Poor witnesses for men are the eyes and ears of those who have barbarian souls."

977 "The adult citizens of Ephesus should hang themselves, every one, and leave the city
978 to children, since they have banished Hermodorus, a man pre-eminent among them,
979 saying, Let no one stand out among us; or let him stand out elsewhere among others."

980 His unity of opposites appears in multiple places:

981 "Sea is the purest and most polluted water: for fish drinkable and healthy, for men
982 undrinkable and harmful."

983 "Collections: wholes and not wholes; brought together, pulled apart; sung in unison,
984 sung in conflict; from all things one and from one all things."

985 “Every pair of contraries is somewhere coinstantiated; and every object coinstantiates
986 at least one pair of contraries.”

987 “Good and ill are one.”

988 But, he’s also inspirational:

989 “Nature loves to hide.”

990 “Sound thinking is the greatest virtue and wisdom: to speak the truth and to act on
991 the basis of an understanding of the nature of things.”

992 “Abundance of knowledge does not teach men to be wise.”

993 “This world-order [kosmos], the same of all, no god nor man did create, but it ever
994 was and is and will be: everliving fire, kindling in measures and being quenched in
995 measures.”

996 “The character of man is his guardian spirit.”

997 “The sun is new every day.”

998 . . . and amusing:

999 “And they pray to these images, as if one were to talk with a man’s house, knowing
1000 not what gods or heroes are.”

1001 “Souls smell in Hell.”

1002 “Every beast is driven to the pasture with blows.”

1003 “Asses would rather have straw than gold.”

1004 1.2.2 Modern Day Pythagoreans

1005 Want to liven a party? Raise the following question:

- 1006 1. Is mathematics invented? Or,
- 1007 2. Is mathematics discovered?

1008 That is, are the theories, proofs, and concepts of mathematics the creation of human
1009 thought, or are they “out there” waiting to be revealed by thinking about them?
1010 “Platonists” would rally around #2. and we’ll talk about that in the next chapter.¹⁵

1011 Now if you want to rejuvenate your now yawning party-goers, narrow the question
1012 to:

- 1013 3. Is mathematics invented in order to explain the physical universe? Or,

¹⁵Want to start an argument? Try to defend any definition of what Pythagoreanism is. (You can also spice up the conversation by trying to defend what Platonism is, which is the next chapter.) I’m not a philosopher, but I do have a sense of how my interpretation of these two ideas fits my experience in modern physics research.

1014 4. Is mathematics discovered to be already “in” the physical universe?

1015 Number 3 suggests that mathematics is only a tool—a language—to describe the
1016 universe. Maybe it’s a lucky break that we’ve invented it and that it seems to do
1017 pretty well. Perhaps another tool might have worked? For example, a musical score
1018 for guitar could be represented by standard musical notation. But it can also be
1019 represented by chord diagrams.

1020 Number 4 suggests that the discovery of mathematical and especially numerical
1021 relationships and their match to what we observe in the universe represents an
1022 uncovering of its fundamental mathematical fabric. Here, Pythagoreans do find a
1023 place: their discovery was that #4 is how it goes. Numbers (and in modern language,
1024 patterns) are *in* physical objects.

1025 Most rough-and-ready physicists would lean towards #3, but not everyone. I’m
1026 close to #4, but in a practical and not spooky way. (Some of my contemporaries are
1027 okay with spookiness when it comes to math and reality.)

1028 We owe a debt to the Pythagoreans and while their application of “number” to
1029 the world is primitive, there are vestiges of their discovery that make science (and
1030 modern life) possible.

1031 **Mathematics describes the universe** There is this nagging feeling that math and
1032 physical reality share a pretty special bond. Before the advent of Pythagoreanism,
1033 we saw that the Ionian approach to parting ways with deities was to ascribe a
1034 fundamental “stuff” as the basis of all physical things. Now, we don’t depend only
1035 on that. We use math.

1036 Take the weather. Before Pythagoreanism took hold, numbers meant “one apple,”
1037 “two apples,” and so on. Counting and nothing more. Before Pythagoras, I think
1038 that describing the weather using numbers might have seemed as strange as for
1039 us saying that the weather is “happy.” While the ancient Pythagoreans didn’t use
1040 numbers in most of the ways that we do, they might not be surprised that we are
1041 now comfortable to describe the properties of our weather more completely with
1042 numbers than with words. I just looked at the weather in Pythagoras’ modern
1043 Crotone in Italy and it’s not happy: it’s 22° C (79° F), with a relative humidity of
1044 76% and since the dew point is 71°, that’s borderline uncomfortable. The barometric
1045 pressure is 1016 mb and rising and with a cloud cover of only 11%, and so visibility is
1046 10 miles. This short narrative puts a picture in your mind of the weather conditions
1047 that words would do much less efficiently or accurately. I could take those numbers
1048 and recreate exactly those conditions in a lab. They are a natural measuring stick
1049 for us and that’s due to our Pythagorean inheritance.

1050 MIT cosmologist, Max Tegmark holds an extreme view that the numbers in our

1051 story aren't just *in* the weather, they *are the weather*. That is, if there's a one-to-one
 1052 correspondence between a number and my interpretation of what the number
 1053 means, then they're the same.

1054 A taste from his controversial book, regarding the electric field:

1055 "If you can thus pair up every entity in our external physical reality with a correspond-
 1056 ing one in a mathematical structure ('This electric-field strength here in physical space
 1057 corresponds to this number in the mathematical structure,' for example), *then our*
 1058 *external physical reality meets the definition of being a mathematical structure* (emphasis,
 1059 mine)—indeed, that same mathematical structure. **tegmark2014**, page 280

1060 That he's under attack suggests that physicists do have strong opinions about #3
 1061 versus #4, as much as they'd probably outwardly profess disinterest.

1062 "So the bottom line is that if you believe in an external reality independent of humans,
 1063 then you must also believe that our physical reality is a mathematical structure.
 1064 Nothing else has a baggage-free description. In other words, we all live in a gigantic
 1065 mathematical object—one that's more elaborate than a dodecahedron, and probably
 1066 also more complex than objects with intimidating names such as Calabi-Yau manifolds,
 1067 tensor bundles and Hilbert spaces, which appear in today's most advanced physics
 1068 theories. *Everything in our world is purely mathematical—including you.* (my emphasis)"
 1069 **tegmark2014**, page 260

1070 Or, in his technical publication **tegmark1998**,

1071 "Physical existence is equivalent to mathematical existence."

1072 I've heard him ask what is a tree. To most it's a barky, green, leafy structure with
 1073 roots and a hardness and so on. To him it's a collection of electrons and quarks
 1074 and reflecting and absorbing light. In turn, the electrons are "-1, 1/2, 1, and 0.511."
 1075 That is, the properties of trees are the collection of the properties of electrons and
 1076 electrons are uniquely described as a negative electrical charge of -1 unit,¹⁶ a
 1077 quantum mechanical "spin" of 1/2, a "lepton number" of 1, and a mass of 0.511
 1078 MeV/c². Protons, neutrons, and quarks. . . and the light that's absorbed and emitted
 1079 are also described completely and uniquely by a different set of numbers.

1080 Now the labels that the numbers have are entirely human-defined. But no matter
 1081 how an alien species might define the unit of electric charge, the electron (and
 1082 proton) have ± 1 of it. So, to him what is a tree is defined by what are the properties
 1083 of a tree, which are entirely defined by a small set of numbers.

1084 Finally, this is a book about Einstein's Special Theory of Relativity and it can almost
 1085 be completely thought of as discovering the importance of a single number: the
 1086 speed of light, c . No number is more special than c .

¹⁶The "fundamental electrical charge" is traditionally 1.6×10^{-19} Coulombs, usually denoted by " e ." An electron's is $-1e$, a proton's is $+1e$, and a neutron's is $0e$.

1087 Tegmark is not alone, but his is a very small club.

1088 **There are special numbers** While I'd not be prepared to say that marriage is "5"
1089 and when justice is done, that "9" is involved, there are special numbers that our
1090 universe seems to have latched onto that both explain what we observe, and were
1091 some of these numbers different, we would not be here. I just referred to one such
1092 special number, the charge of an electron or a proton.

1093 Many numbers in nature play a role that designates unique properties of substances
1094 or processes that substances undergo. There are static properties of matter which
1095 have conventionally-defined, critical numeric values. Here's one: 1836.153. This
1096 is the ratio of the mass of the proton divided by the mass of the electron. An alien
1097 species might not use the same units that we do, but whatever system they used
1098 would have to replicate this ratio. Otherwise, their big bang and chemistry would
1099 be completely different from ours. The formation of hydrogen atoms in the early
1100 universe would have occurred at a different temperature and our early universe
1101 would not have formed galaxies.

1102 Another one: Water freezes at a particular temperature. What the number is depends
1103 on a conventional scale ($^{\circ}$ C or $^{\circ}$ F), but that there is a definitive event and that it
1104 can be quantified by a unique number of degrees makes it special. If that freezing
1105 point of water were slightly different, then the geological history of the Earth would
1106 have been different.

1107 Inherent in a Pythagorean view of the physical universe is that the "numbers are
1108 in the thing" and that we can poke at nature with experiments and extract the
1109 mathematical essence that's embedded inside. Just like Pythagoras did... before
1110 anyone else.

1111 1.2.2.1 Unreasonable?

1112 Generally, we physicists don't generally lack in confidence. So in the interest of
1113 full-disclosure, here's a complete capitulation, a sort of a reluctant confession that
1114 we don't know why math and physics are so linked up:

1115 Ask Mr Google to search just for the words "unreasonable effectiveness" and stand
1116 back. In less than a second, you'll be treated to a list of 12 million references to
1117 the Nobel Laureate, Eugene Wigner's 1960 article, *The unreasonable effectiveness of*
1118 *mathematics in the natural sciences*. It's actually a written version of a lecture he gave
1119 at NYU and it's among the most famous documents in physics. It's so ubiquitous,
1120 that Wiley Publishing is pleased for you to download it for free.

1121 In that same vein, here's a word that you won't find physicists using: "miracle."
1122 The last paragraph in Wigner's article states:

1123 “Let me end on a more cheerful note. **The miracle of the appropriateness of the**
 1124 **language of mathematics for the formulation of the laws of physics is a wonderful**
 1125 **gift** which we neither understand nor deserve. We should be grateful for it and hope
 1126 that it will remain valid in future research and that it will extend, for better or for
 1127 worse, to our pleasure, even though perhaps also to our bafflement, to wide branches
 1128 of learning.” [emphasis mine]

1129 “A more cheerful note”? “The *Miracle*”? for heavens’ sake? If that’s his conclusion,
 1130 can you get a sense of how his previous nine pages went?

1131 There’s a straight line from Pythagoras (and Pythagoreans . . . remember) to Plato
 1132 and Platonism and to physics! But we don’t understand this “unreasonableness,”
 1133 and sometimes it is kind of uncomfortable. Gloves come off when physicists and
 1134 astronomers argue about multiverses, string theories, and measurement theory in
 1135 quantum mechanics.

1136 So, by now maybe you’re a little more aware of the possibility that we may *all be a*
 1137 *little bit Pythagorean*. Over and over we learn this.

1138 1.2.3 Zeno and His Paradoxes

1139 Parmenides had a following and his most devoted, and enthusiastic partner was the
 1140 younger **Zeno of Elea** (ca –490 to ca –430). What he did was mess with everyone’s
 1141 mind about simple, common-sense experiences. He’s remembered primarily for 10
 1142 paradoxes, two of which about motion I’ll remind you of here as the most famous.
 1143 He wants to show you that what you think you know, you don’t, that common
 1144 sense deceives. (Like in Quantum Mechanics and Relativity, where common sense
 1145 left the building a long time ago.) I’ll do them in reverse order. (By the way, how do
 1146 we know of his arguments? Plato, again, in a dialog where Socrates deals with the
 1147 young Zeno, playing himself. And Aristotle, who goes after Zeno.)

1148 “**The “Dichotomy.”** This is the famous race. In order to run the 100 meter dash,
 1149 you’ve got to get to 50 meters. In order to get to 50 meters, you’ve got to get to 25
 1150 meters. See where I’m going (or maybe *not going*)? According to Zeno, there are an
 1151 infinite number of distances that have to be traversed in order to move in space at
 1152 all. So you can’t get to 100 meters, in fact, you can’t move at all. MOTION ON THE
 1153 EARTH is impossible. Aristotle noticed that this is like the Achilles and the Tortoise
 1154 paradox, except the conclusion of no motion is reserved to the Dichotomy.

1155 Now this has been dissected for centuries. Ask Mr Google about “Zeno” and you’ll
 1156 see 36 million hits. The push-back begins with Aristotle, who argued persuasively,
 1157 but in the end, inconclusively, that you can move through an infinite number of
 1158 spaces if the time intervals become shorter and shorter while you do it. Aristotle
 1159 hated infinity, so this must have been hard for him. But this presumes that Zeno

1160 was suggesting that the motion would take an infinite amount of time, but maybe
 1161 it's because he was trying to cram an infinite number of steps into a finite period of
 1162 time. So Aristotle's argument is not general enough.

1163 The modern solution requires an understanding of how speed relates to time and
 1164 space, a very modern set of ideas that are the heart of Relativity. I'll show you a
 1165 complete explanation in Appendix ??.

1166 **The Paradox of Infinite Divisibility.** This paradox is the jumping-off point to an
 1167 entirely different way of dealing with Heraclitus and Parmenides: If an object is
 1168 made of parts, then one should be able to start cutting. . . into two parts, then four
 1169 parts, and so on. At some point you reach some end: 1) If after an infinite number
 1170 of slices, you find nothing. . . then the object was made of nothing—a **not-is**. 2) If
 1171 after a finite number of slices, you find something. . . but it has zero size, then the
 1172 object was made of something that has no size. Another kind of **not-is**. 3) If after a
 1173 finite number of slicings, you find something that has finite size, like an element?
 1174 Well, you're just not done slicing!

This is a modern thing as we are perfectly content to imagine that quarks that make
 of the proton and neutron have no size,^a likewise the electron. But we have a field
 description of elementary particles and the forces among them, so we have a quantum
 mechanical push-back against Zeno here. But prior to the 20th century, a physics
 1175 solution was not possible.

1176 ^aYes. Our word "particle" creates an image of a little billiard ball, doesn't it? In actuality,
 the size of quantum mechanical objects is so ill-defined as to have little meaning outside of an
 agreed-upon criteria involving waves.

1177 You can see how this works. Zeno was apparently clever enough to waste the pixels
 1178 on your computer screen in 36 million hits. . . all in service to the Parmenides two
 1179 arguments: **Nothing changes** and **knowledge from perception cannot lead to truth**.
 1180

1181 **Chapter 2**

1182 **Can't Live With 'Em Or Without 'Em :**
1183 **Plato and Aristotle**

1184 "The safest general characterization of the European philosophical tradition is that
1185 it consists of a series of footnotes to Plato."

1186 - A.N Whitehead (1861-1947), *Process and Reality*

1187

1188 Bert and Ernie, Kirk and Spock, Mantle and Maris, Venus and Serena,
1189 Abbott and Costello...Plato and Aristotle. One can't have one without
1190 the other and, just like the other pairs in that list, these last two are
1191 deep subjects. My need for Plato and Aristotle's contributions to the
1192 study of MOTION are for two ideas: following Pythagorean inspiration,
1193 Plato and his collaborators built the first spherical working model of
1194 MOTION BY THE EARTH and Aristotle expanded on it. They were both
1195 wrong.

1196

1197 And, while Plato didn't concern himself with MOTION ON THE
1198 EARTH (except in an almost impenetrable portion of his last book),
1199 Aristotle was all over MOTION ON THE EARTH and invented its systematic
1200 study, informing—and infecting—science for 2000 years. It took until
1201 the 17th century before we could be all over with Aristotle. His models
1202 of MOTION ON THE EARTH, MOTION BY THE EARTH, and MOTION IN THE
1203 HEAVENS became Medieval and Renaissance Church dogma, but are
1204 wrong in almost every respect. By pushing back scientists learned what
1205 was better and why.

1206

1207

1208

1209

1210

1211

1212

1213

1214

So why is it that Plato's shadow hangs around while Aristotle's importance for physics disappeared more than 400 years ago? We still talk about Platonic worldviews in some fundamental branches of physics, but nobody talks about Aristotelian—anything. Plato put important questions in play that remain troubling: What can we know? How do we know when we're right? And, most importantly, what is the role of 'mathematics in the fabric of the universe?

1215

1216

1217

1218

1219

1220

1221

1222

It was the worst-kept secret sneak attack in history. Everyone knew that the Persians were coming as under King Darius' son Xerxes the Great's command, the invading infantry slowly marched along in parallel to the Persian navy counter-clockwise around the inside of the Aegean basin, subjugating the Ionians along the way. Anaximenes lived under that locally-sourced, Persian rule that drove Pythagoras to Italy. About 100 years before Socrates' execution following a 10 year advance in –480 the battle was joined with an amassed Persian force of at 150,000 soldiers and 600 warships. Athens was evacuated and the Persians destroyed the city.

1223

1224

1225

1226

1227

1228

1229

1230

1231

1232

1233

1234

1235

1236

The Greek confederation then organized itself: the wounded Athens mounted the naval campaign and Sparta, the foot soldier command. What followed was a series of military maneuvers, still studied today. Spartan heroism of King Leonidas with 300 Spartan troops and a total of 9,000 allied soldiers met and slaughtered the Persians at the pass at Thermopylae. The movie and the comic book series *300* might jog your memory ([nunnari2006](#)). While this was going on, the Athenian navy engaged and overwhelmingly defeated the much larger Persian naval force. Finally during the summer of –479, the Persians were defeated in a decisive land battle. Yet, war continued in one form or another for thirty more years until the Persians fled the Aegean leaving behind a Sparta with a greatly enhanced reputation. Proud Athens rebuilt after that disaster in –480 and under Pericles' leadership — throughout the decades of extended conflict, began its 75 year Golden Age when everything you think of as Greek in culture, art, architecture, and philosophy was intentionally created.

1237

1238

1239

1240

1241

Ironically, even though Sparta could be credited as having been the major military force in the Greeks' victory, its isolated and belligerent nature simply did not equip it to lead during peacetime. In contrast, while Athens had been destroyed, its nature was to rebuild stronger, to politically organize, and to lead. All while doing what Greeks did best: fighting.

1242

1243

While the Golden Age was unrolling, Athens simultaneously managed to battle with: Sparta –465; Corinth and Sparta –459; Samos –440; Corinth again –433;

1244 Potidaea –433; Mageria –433; Sparta again –431 (Socrates was active as a soldier
 1245 during this period), (Score: **Sparta 1, Athens 0**) Syracuse and Sparta –415, (Score:
 1246 **Sparta 2, Athens 0**) ; Sparta now allied with Persia –414, (Score: **Sparta 3, Athens**
 1247 **0. Game, Set, Match**).

1248 After that third war with Sparta,¹ Athens surrendered to Spartan general Lysander
 1249 in –404. Plato was 23 years old and Socrates had five years to live.

1250 Athens badly handled their unfortunate overreach and eventual defeat and in the
 1251 final stages of the war they managed to: expel their leading general, execute six
 1252 other military leaders, and flip from autocracy to democracy and back to autocracy.
 1253 Socrates was on the autocracy side and it was the democrats who condemned him
 1254 to drink the hemlock in –399.

1255 Athens' subjugation by Sparta after the two Peloponnesian Wars was tumultuous —
 1256 governance of the city jerked back and forth between oligarchs and democrats. In
 1257 the same way that the Golden Age of Classical Greece emerged during war with
 1258 the Persians, in the midst of the city's internal chaos, western philosophy began
 1259 and was followed quickly by the first systematic attempts to understand MOTION
 1260 BY THE EARTH, MOTION ON THE EARTH, and MOTION IN THE HEAVENS by our two
 1261 lead actors. Yet the catalyst to all of this progress was interested in neither. Socrates'
 1262 persistent question was: how to live a virtuous life, not how do things move. As his
 1263 talented acolyte, Plato adopted the older man's voice and wrote truly engaging tales,
 1264 but expressed his own ideas and, while his program was ostensibly one of ethics,
 1265 the Socrates/Plato approach opened a new front in the battle with the Parmenides
 1266 Problem which resonates in modern physics today. And, as so often happens in
 1267 philosophy (and physics), the next productive steps were in opposition, launched
 1268 by Aristotle, one of the most remarkable intellects in history and whose words we
 1269 have are probably from lecture notes and not intended as his legacy literature. Yet
 1270 in physics: Plato endured and Aristotle is gone.

1271 2.1 Act V A Little Bit of Plato

1272 **Plato** (–429 to –348) is actually a nickname, suggesting someone of broad shoulders
 1273 or perhaps a wrestler. The name on his driver's license would have been Aristockes
 1274 and his aristocratic family had been influential for generations. Plato was no
 1275 democrat and grew up during the Peloponnesian War (–431 to –405) and the
 1276 subsequent subjugation of Athens by the victorious Spartans. In many ways Plato's
 1277 idea of the correct form of government was clearly informed by the collectivism
 1278 and brutality of the Spartan way. (Set the context with the timeline in Figure ?? on
 1279 page ??.)

¹who actually allied with Persia!

One of the signature events of his life was the story of his attempt to help form a government in Syracuse where he somehow got the idea that he could turn the tyrant Dionysius into a philosopher-king, since in Plato's opinion leaders should be philosophers. That got him imprisoned and even sold into slavery for a while (or so the story goes), until he was ransomed. He actually tried two more times, which brings to mind one's questionable mental state as per Einstein's observation much later about repeating the same mistake over and over and expecting a different outcome..

His life's direction was formed when he, like many young men in the newly democratic Athens, started to associate with **Socrates** (–470 to –399) who, after his (apparently distinguished) service as a foot soldier in the war, took philosophy on an entirely different course from investigating the nature of reality to how best to live a satisfactory life. We learn in school about Socrates' self-administered execution at the hands of the democratic Athenian politics—one of the reasons that Plato was distrustful of democracy. It was traditional to give the convicted criminal options on how they would like to do away with themselves and Socrates suggested that he be given free food for life. That was turned down and eventually death by poisoning was prescribed.

Plato's 35 books are all in the dialogue form, conversations between Socrates and a variety of fictional and real persons. Unlike Aristotle's largely academic writing (which might have been lecture notes), Plato's books are literature and valued for their style and lyricism. Plato himself is only mentioned twice and he never speaks directly. The assumption is that he's speaking through his mentor and that the ideas are his, and not meant to be those of the older man. (One book, *The Apologies*, might have been more personally Socrates as in that volume he defends himself against his accusers.) So the ideas are Plato's and the books comprise his philosophy as it evolves over his productive, long life. Almost all of his work follows a general theme, and what he seems to struggle with is what I've called the Parmenides Problem. Plato wants to contrast what we experience in our everyday world—objects (physical things) and ideas (like virtue, justice, beauty, what's good)—with abstract ideas that are the source of the variety of physical things and the imperfect values we associate with more aspirational ideas.

It might be reasonable to view the Socrates of Plato's dialogues as a literary invention, but he was known to broader Athens and even parodied in the *Clouds*, a vicious comedy by Aristophanes and figured in other writers' accounts, including in dialog form. But the world now knows of Socrates through Plato and he figures into every one of Plato's dialogues as "that guy" who irritates everyone, although in the later dialogues his role diminishes. His job is to ask simple-seeming questions (the "Socratic Method") of an assembled group of friends (or foes), often about an ethical

1313 matter. What's temperance? What is virtue? What is justice? The course of these
 1314 sorts of innocent sounding conversations is repeated: the folks being questioned are
 1315 maneuvered into impossible rhetorical cul-de-sacs, shown to be incapable of any
 1316 kind of logical thinking, and more often than not, shown to not know things that
 1317 they should have known. Meanwhile, Socrates rarely says what he thinks, in fact,
 1318 he usually hides behind the assertion that he doesn't know either, but at least he
 1319 knows that he doesn't know. Superior to a fault. These questions also often segue
 1320 into something more than they seem, and many of them move to more weighty
 1321 topics like how *do* you know what you know. That is, they form the beginning of
 1322 serious Epistemology, one of the foundational philosophical disciplines.

1323 Plato's output was large and I'll choose only a few topics that inform our scientific
 1324 project. Unlike almost all of the previously considered Greek philosophers, we have
 1325 complete writings. He famously started *The Academy*, a school that lasted more than
 1326 700 years whose star pupil was Aristotle, whom we will consider below. Bertrand
 1327 Russell (in his Literature Nobel Prize winning, *A History of Western Philosophy*)
 1328 appropriately sums up what we're about to dive into:

1329 "Aristotle's metaphysics, roughly speaking, may be described as Plato diluted by
 1330 common sense. . . He is difficult because Plato and common sense do not mix easily."
 1331 (br1946) *A History of Western Philosophy*

1332 My focused concern is with two aspects of Plato's philosophy and then his physics
 1333 and how they're related. I'll leave his modeling in astronomy to Chapter ?? when I
 1334 will preview all of the Greek astronomy at once, but I'll consider his overall approach
 1335 to astronomy here. Of concern then (and now) are Plato's Epistemology—what does
 1336 it mean to know something (from the *Meno* and *Phaedo*), his Metaphysics—what is
 1337 the nature of reality (from *Phaedo*, *Parmenides*, and *Republic*), and his physics (from
 1338 *Republic*, *Timaeus* and Book X of the *Laws*).

1339 2.1.1 What Is True Knowledge?

1340 Plato was deeply influenced by our Parmenides Problem and took this on with
 1341 a study of the broader question of what actually constitutes true knowledge. He
 1342 thought deeply about this and his conclusions became grist for philosophical mills
 1343 for the next 2500 years.² He decided that there are two hallmarks to knowing: that
 1344 knowledge should be infallible and that it should be "of something that is." Typical
 1345 was the exchange between Socrates and the 16 year old Theaetetus in the dialogue
 1346 by that name. Socrates teases out of the boy his ideas of four kinds of knowledge,
 1347 and demolishes every one of them. First up, what do we learn by *perception* as a
 1348 source of knowledge? That's dispatched by Socrates, perception is infallible (since

²I'm grateful to philosopher, Professor Harold I. Brown for important discussions on this complex topic in Platonic philosophy.

1349 your internal evaluation of what you perceive is true to you), but perception is
 1350 incapable of demonstrating that the objects of perception actually exist. So it fails on
 1351 the second hallmark. Second up is *belief* as a source of knowledge? That results in a
 1352 blistering dissertation on subjectivity. And, finally, third up is "true belief." Naive
 1353 belief and even true belief are fallible, so failing on the first hallmark. Three outs.
 1354 But what about *belief with a reason* to hold that belief, what in the context of *Theaetetus*
 1355 is sometimes called "true belief plus an account" or, "Justified True Belief"? This is
 1356 sometimes incorrectly described as Plato's own theory of knowledge, but Socrates
 1357 makes hash of JTB and leaves the question in an unsatisfying state. Let's look at a
 1358 couple of examples.

1359 J+T+B was considered to be among the best efforts into nearly the present day
 1360 and relies on the three aspects memorialized in its name. The B: one can't claim
 1361 knowledge about something you don't believe. (I read that my calendar reports that
 1362 today is Tuesday, but I believe it's Monday certainly doesn't qualify as knowledge
 1363 of Monday.) The T: the fact must be true (if the fact is not true, then you cannot be
 1364 said to have knowledge of it.) The J: whatever you claim about the fact, you need to
 1365 be able to justify it.

1366 Consider this claim: It is 3 o'clock, I believe it's 3 o'clock, because I looked at my
 1367 watch and see that time displayed. B, T, and J are all in play and this seems a
 1368 reasonable example of knowledge.

But there are holes and weaknesses. What about instead of that J, how about J2:
 It is 3 o'clock, I believe it's 3 o'clock, because 3 is my favorite number. I'm right,
 since it really is 3 o'clock but that justification is silly and certainly doesn't qualify as
 knowledge of the time. How about this, J3: It is 3 o'clock, I believe it's 3 o'clock,
 1369 because I looked at my watch and see that time displayed. But...I didn't know that
 my watch was broken and had stopped at precisely 3 o'clock. So it was just luck that
 my reading corresponded to the right time. So that's hard to accept as knowledge.
 In fact, it was only in 1963 that Edmund Gettier apparently found counterexamples to
 1370 JTB which are now called "Gettier Cases."

1371 Clearly Justification is the rub and many efforts have tried to turn J+T+B in to
 1372 J+T+B+X... where X is some thing added to take care of the Gettier Cases. It's
 1373 an ongoing problem. For scientific claims of knowledge, sometimes Justification
 1374 weaknesses turn on problems with observation and even the senses so we're right
 1375 back to the Parmenides Problem.

1376 Plato had an answer and it turns out to be more than a theory of knowledge, but also
 1377 a theory of what's real: fixing epistemological problems resulting in metaphysical
 1378 commitments.

1379 True knowledge for Plato can only come from permanent, unchanging things.

1380 Thanks, Parmenides. If something is true, it must be so forever, which means that it
 1381 was never not true, nor will it ever become not true. He falls squarely in the Being
 1382 camp, as opposed to the Becoming camp.

Notice how this demand of permanence as the qualifying feature of true knowledge
 is an **unquestioned commitment**. There's no room for degrees of knowing—we all
 know things with varying levels of trust and this is especially true in science where not
 1383 being able to question an assertion is actually now the very definition of "unscientific."
 I think that their insistence on permanence is a function of their being impressed with
 geometry and the fact that it was very early days in the brand new field of epistemology.

1384

1385 Plato differed from ardent Eleatics like Parmenides by insisting that knowledge is
 1386 indeed possible, but there's a catch.

1387 He proposed after *Theaetetus* that there are two worlds:

- 1388 • The world of the Forms.
- 1389 • The world of the senses.

1390 2.1.2 The Forms

1391 Plato's theory of the Forms is one of the most difficult ideas in philosophy but com-
 1392 prehending it is critical for an understanding of his projects, *but also for appreciating*
 1393 *physics*. He gives abstract concepts an existence of their own and a job to do with a
 1394 consequence that sort of grates on you.

1395 Take high school (please): if you ever took a geometry class you were given a set of
 1396 pieces out of which you could create new pieces with just a ruler and a compass.
 1397 These pieces include things like points with no extent and lines with no thickness.
 1398 You manipulated and proved theorems about perfect triangles and perfect circles.
 1399 Let's focus on that last one.

1400 Think of all of the "circular" things that you come in contact with in your everyday
 1401 life. Coins, dials on appliances, buttons on your shirt, a camera lens, a cookie,
 1402 maybe a rendition of something circular in an image or on a screen. You know that
 1403 none of these circles are the circles of your geometry class. But all of these circular
 1404 things share their property of *circularity*. They may woefully miss in the perfection
 1405 of that high school circle in your mind—but through thinking about it, you know
 1406 that your Oreo is circular, almost.

1407 Plato would say that that unique abstract circle *actually exists* as a "Form." That
 1408 there's a kind of reality—a realm—that's different from the reality that you think of
 1409 when you drop that circular plate in the kitchen. That abstract realm is where the
 1410 Forms exist.

1411 That high school geometry-circle is such an abstract notion. But you can grasp
 1412 that reality, you can apply it, engineers can use it, and you recognize it when you
 1413 see it...only in your mind. But try an experiment: construct the best circular thing
 1414 that you can and measure its diameter in a hundred points around the center at
 1415 micron precision— while your rendition may be a good one, it's not that abstract
 1416 high school one, is it. The Form of a circle is aspirational but can't be studied by
 1417 measuring regular-life circular things, rather it can only be brought to life through
 1418 your intellect. The Form of a circle has always been there (circles were not born)
 1419 and that realm is outside of space and time. Can you get on board with abstract
 1420 things being real?

1421 Maybe Plato's assignment of "real" to mathematical abstractions is a little less
 1422 odd than at first glance. But he went further than geometry and you might have
 1423 experience with non-mathematical abstractions. Here's one: "We hold these truths
 1424 to be self-evident, that all men are created equal..." What is a self-evident truth? If
 1425 it's a "truth" then questioning it is a waste of effort, it's permanent in a Parmenides
 1426 sort of way. If an idea is self-evident, then in some sense it's always been there,
 1427 imprinted in us, while apparently accessible, but at the same time, distant.

1428 You can't hold such a truth in your hand and you know it's not universal in our
 1429 everyday life since, "all men are created equal" is untestable since the ones we know
 1430 are tall, some are smart, and yes, some are disadvantaged. That they're "equal" is
 1431 an abstraction—again, an aspirational idea of perfection—that we can hold in our
 1432 minds but we know won't be realized in "our world." But a nation of 300 million
 1433 "Platonists" swears by that truth.

1434 What about realities outside of our plate-dropping reality? If one is a Christian, then
 1435 you've been brought up to believe in such a reality—heaven (and hell) are outside
 1436 of our everyday lives.

1437 When I go to a furniture store I see hundreds of sofas. They're all different, but they
 1438 all share... a "sofa-ness." They're all *participating (sharing) in the Form of the Sofa*
 1439 which I can (only) know of in my mind. It's a perfect sofa.

1440 With the forms, the Parmenides Problem is dealt with in a brand new way: there
 1441 is a world of Being and a world of Becoming and they are connected, but in a
 1442 hierarchical way. And, it's not just living room furniture that has Forms. There is
 1443 a Form for everything: even Justice, Virtue, Beauty, and the Good... the latter of
 1444 which is somehow a super Form.

1445 2.1.3 The Republic

1446 Plato's contribution to science is not any particular theory or practice, but as (gerl70)
 1447 suggests it is more his philosophy of science that we value. This is laid out most

1448 explicitly in *Republic*, probably his most famous book, ostensibly a treatise on politics
 1449 and good governance. It's here where he describes how a city should be ruled,
 1450 certainly not by popular election, but by the training of a special category of people
 1451 bred and educated in order to be rulers, the philosopher-kings, the guardians. Their
 1452 lives would be scripted from early ages, living communally, and essentially the
 1453 pool of potential candidates for leadership. Their educations would be scripted
 1454 as well, relying on an intensive study of mathematics to create a habit of mind.
 1455 The goal is for them to be completely comfortable with the most abstract concepts,
 1456 including Justice and what's Good. Learning mathematics is a primary route to
 1457 that appreciation. *Republic* includes a few analogies to try to get Plato's point across.
 1458 Two are relevant for physics.

1459 **Analogy of the Divided Line.**

1460 Along with the Allegory of the Cave, the "Analogy of the Divided Line" is important
 1461 for Plato and I think important for physics—as Galileo and modern physics will
 1462 eventually enlighten for us. A rendition of the Divided Line is in Figure ???. What
 1463 we can know is a hierarchy, from muddled to perfectly clear and divides into
 1464 two broad "realms," one representing our *Becoming* world—The Visible Realm—
 1465 which we occupy in everyday life, and the other representing the *Being* world—The
 1466 Intelligible Realm—which is outside of space and time and only recognized through
 1467 thought.

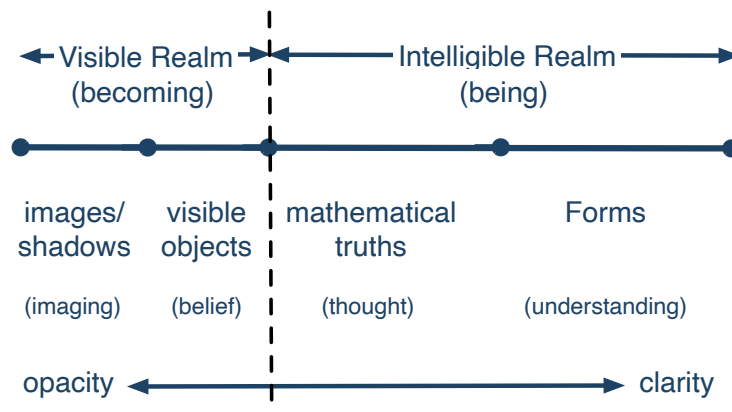


Figure 2.1: The line represents a kind of knowledge-hierarchy, from unclear to perfectly clear.

1468 The Becoming realm is broken into two levels of which the objects of the first, and
 1469 lowest segment are shadows and illusions of objects in our experience. The shaky
 1470 knowledge we have about them are mere illusion and dreams. The objects of the
 1471 second stage are actual, everyday objects themselves, and the knowledge we have
 1472 about them are opinion and belief gleaned through our (untrustworthy) senses.
 1473 Taken together these two stages constitute our knowledge of our everyday world,

1474 where things change: the Visible Realm is where we use our senses and dreams
1475 to navigate our lives.

1476 The Intelligible Realm is only accessible through thought and reason and is likewise
1477 divided into two more sophisticated segments. The first of these includes knowl-
1478 edge gained through mathematics and hypotheticals (think high school geometry)
1479 about which we have knowledge through reasoning. And finally, the highest seg-
1480 ment of the Intelligible Realm is of the Forms, the pinnacle of clarity, “beyond
1481 hypothesis” which is aspirational, not easily realizable.

1482 Earlier I opined that “degrees of knowing” is a more modern way of thinking and
1483 the Divided Line actually sneaks up on just that. As we’ll see when we study
1484 Galileo, there is a realm of the universe which is very hard to observe (on Earth) but
1485 which is our goal when we theorize about nature. So I’m not quite willing to pass
1486 this off as silly, while at the same time I don’t agree with the realm of the Forms
1487 as an ethereal parallel universe that we cannot access but through rationality. Stay
1488 tuned.

1489 **Allegory of the Cave.**

1490 He famously tries to work out more of these distinctions in the *Republic* with the
1491 famous “Allegory of the Cave” and in the *Meno* with the idea of “Reminiscence.” In
1492 the former, prisoners in a dark cave are shackled to the ground facing a wall. They
1493 can only look straight ahead and what they see are shadows of objects and puppets
1494 that are held in front of a fire behind them so that they project on the wall. If they
1495 see a sofa on the wall, it’s because the Form of the sofa, which is behind them and
1496 out of sight, is projected as a shadow of the real Sofa in front of the fire.

1497 Now, if one of the prisoners escapes her bonds and looks around she’ll see the fire
1498 and the contrived circumstances. The light from the fire would hurt and she’d want
1499 to go back to her former spot. But if she were dragged out of the cave and into
1500 the sun, she’s blinded but slowly she’d look around her and realize that there are
1501 actual things in the world and not just shadows. Notice that in the Allegory, she’s
1502 moving from left to right in the Divided Line in Figure ???. She ventures back into
1503 the cave and tries to describe that true reality to her still captured colleagues. But
1504 in the dark she’d not see well and the prisoners would not allow her to persuade
1505 them to follow her into the sun since it apparently takes away one’s sight. Plato
1506 even worries that the prisoners might kill the one who escaped.

1507 Obviously, Plato is describing the daunting project that he’s taken on as the enlight-
1508 ened former prisoner trying to explain what’s Real and True to everyday people
1509 who don’t want to accept it. The similarities to Neo’s trip out of the realm of per-
1510 ceptions and into the realm of the real is not an accident as the movie *The Matrix* is
1511 full of philosophical allegories, and the Cave is one of them.

1512 What we can learn in the realm of the Forms is true knowledge and a goal of
 1513 mastering philosophy. What we can know of the world of appearances is simply
 1514 opinion. The Forms inspired many in the centuries to follow, from Neo-Platonic
 1515 Christian images to modern science. We'll come back to them in Galileo where
 1516 finally, properly characterizing MOTION begins. By the way, Plato despised art. A
 1517 painting of a mountain as nothing but an imitation (the painting) of an imitation (a
 1518 sensible, actual example mountain) of the form of Mountain, which is the only real
 1519 thing.

1520 2.1.4 Mathematics For Plato from Republic

1521 Plato's experience in Italy wasn't limited to a failed experiment in his theory of
 1522 governance, but began as a deliberate project to study with Pythagoreans. Pythago-
 1523 ras had been gone for a century by that point, but two schools grew up around
 1524 his legacy. The *acusmatici* viewed themselves as the guarantors of Pythagoras' the
 1525 man's legacy as a complete system. Not only his mathematics, but the other aspects
 1526 of the Brotherhood were preserved and defended without expansion or elaboration.
 1527 On the other side were the *mathematici* who bought into reverence for the man, but
 1528 intentionally expanded the mathematics to new areas of research, an unwelcome
 1529 sin in the eyes of the *acusmatici* who eventually died out.

1530 Recall that Plato and Aristotle probably learned most of Pythagoreanism from
 1531 Philolaus, but Plato's mathematical inclinations came from a contemporary, one
 1532 of the mathematici that Plato befriended and learned from, **Archytas of Tarentum**
 1533 (ca -420 to -355) who is one of our characters in Chapter ???. Our title character in
 1534 the next chapter is **Eudoxus of Cnidus** (-408 to -355), a student of Archytas and
 1535 the most significant mathematician before Archimedes. Both influenced Plato and
 1536 Aristotle's cosmology, and that subject kicked off two millennia of modeling and
 1537 eventually, dogma. The mathematics required in the guardians' education came
 1538 from Archytas, arithmetic, geometry, astronomy, and harmonics. Plato didn't fully
 1539 agree and added a fifth subject, solid geometry.

1540 This is very much physics as we'll see. Maybe you can begin to understand Plato's
 1541 elevation of mathematics—in the Greek life of his day, geometry and proportions—
 1542 to the point of his famous sign above the door, "Let no one who is not a geometer
 1543 enter." (Well, that sign only crops up in the 4th century AD, so it's probably a myth.)
 1544 Geometry is venerated by Plato and all who follow for centuries.

1545 This is hit directly in *Republic* where Socrates extracts from Glaucon³ the reasoning
 1546 behind requiring astronomy for guardian training. As usual, Socrates/Plato starts
 1547 out with a theme which in the course of explaining it, evolves into a matter of serious

³Possibly, Plato's older half-brother's name.

1548 philosophical interest. Glaucon tries to guess at why astronomy is important. Maybe
 1549 because it's useful for recognizing seasons, or timing agricultural events. Practical
 1550 things. That doesn't go over well and so he tries again: maybe astronomy is "good
 1551 for the soul"... that looking at they sky takes us away from looking at everyday
 1552 things. Again, not productive for Socrates. Here's where geometry comes in and
 1553 where Plato earns an uncertain reputation for suggesting that "armchair astronomy"
 1554 is the only way to go: doing astronomy without ever looking at the stars. Here's
 1555 how I interpret this:

1556 Back to the literal drawing board: Take out a ruler and the sharpest pencil you have
 1557 and carefully draw the most precise triangle you can create and now get the best
 1558 protractor you can buy and try to verify that the interior angles of that triangle all
 1559 add up to 180° . No matter how careful you are, you'll fail to perfectly measure
 1560 $180.000\dots^\circ$. In fact, Socrates/Plato would tell you to not bother since studying an
 1561 everyday triangle won't help. The perfect 180° is in your head and its truth is one
 1562 of reasoning and geometrical proof.

1563 Socrates/Plato suggest that the same is true for astronomy.

1564 "We shall therefore treat astronomy, like geometry, as setting us problems for solution",
 1565 I said, "and ignore the visible heavens, if we want to make a genuine study of the
 1566 subject and use it to convert the mind's natural intelligence to a useful purpose."
 1567 Socrates/Plato, *Republic*.

1568 He says that you can look at the stars but discerning their actual motions cannot
 1569 be done by measuring the apparent, but flawed motions of the imperfect stars and
 1570 planets. You can only understand their motions by reasoning; astronomy without
 1571 looking up! Like the triangle, you might get hints from the world of Becoming, but
 1572 only through reasoning can you learn what the stars and planets do in the perfect
 1573 world of Being.

1574 Here is **another unquestioned commitment** by Plato. That the stars and planets
 1575 would necessarily execute perfect motion is an assumption. Again, this is the very
 1576 earliest days of astronomy and philosophy and it's built on a variety of prejudices.

1576 Plato's "Doctrine of Reminiscence" is another idea that comes from the Forms. In
 1577 the *Meno* Socrates demonstrates that a slave boy actually knows geometrical proofs
 1578 without knowing that he knows them! By asking questions, in his Socrates-way.
 1579 In the *Meno* the protagonist, Meno (a real, young aristocrat) asks Socrates if Virtue
 1580 can be taught and of course Socrates begins by asking the young man to define
 1581 what Virtue is and then dismembers his multiple attempts at an answer. The scene
 1582 degenerates into Meno now becoming frazzled and paralyzed as the discussion
 1583 evolves. As often happens more than the problem at hand emerges, including
 1584 what's called "Meno's Paradox": the realization that if you know something, you

1585 don't need to ask about it but if you don't know it, then you don't know enough
 1586 to ask. Of course this all leaves everyone unsatisfied. (It's surprising to me that
 1587 anyone ever wanted to talk to Socrates.)

1588 The discussion turns to a religious view that the soul has always existed and will
 1589 exist after we die and that the soul knows all that there is to know before and
 1590 after and therefore, we already know everything. . . we've just forgotten it. He then
 1591 proceeds to demonstrate this idea by asking a slave boy the geometrical proof of
 1592 how to double the area of a square. By asking him successive questions, he pulls
 1593 the proof out of the boy. (You can see the proof in Technical Appendix ??).

In school, did you ever successfully work out a proof in geometry or mathematics?
 Don't you do a little victory dance inside, maybe with a knowing nod — Aha!— that
 solution seems like it was there all along and all you did was *reveal* it. That you almost
remembered it. This is the basic characteristic of Deductive Reasoning. It doesn't
 1594 lead to anything new, but reinforces—(or recalls, suggests Plato)—that something
 that was already in the premises. I know I've had that feeling and I can understand
 why Plato chose a geometric proof to illustrate his idea, which is broader than just
 math for him, of remembrance. What Plato was really after was the fact that the Form
 of that geometric proof was there all along, in that Intelligible Realm, all the time.
 1595

1596 2.1.4.1 The Soul

1597 The "Soul" is a very Greek idea which functions at multiple levels for Plato, in
 1598 one dialogue, he assigns three separate jobs to the Soul. For our purposes, he's
 1599 impressed with the idea that some things are inanimate — like a rock — and that
 1600 somethings appear to be animate. The very word "animate" gives you a sense of
 1601 what he thought might be the distinguishing feature between animate objects: they
 1602 can they move on their own. So in some ways, this is a question of MOTION ON
 1603 THE EARTH (but he extends it to MOTION IN THE HEAVENS). He found the Soul a
 1604 useful cause for all things that can move of their own accord — he would speak of
 1605 "self-motion" — as imbued with Soul. It's not only humans, but birds, flowers, even
 1606 planets which appear to be able to execute locomotion on their own that enjoy their
 1607 very own Soul. We'll see that this idea actually figures into some of his astronomy,
 1608 so in a backdoor sort of way. . . this is an example of MOTION BY THE EARTH! It
 1609 is this very talented Soul that causes self-motion among animate objects, but also
 1610 persists before and after death. We get a glimpse of the all-knowing Soul when we
 1611 do a mathematical deduction, as Socrates illustrated with the slave boy.

1612 **2.1.5 Timaeus**

1613 Boy, the European medievals must have been confused about Plato. Until the
 1614 early 12th century, the only Latin translation of any of his works was just one:
 1615 *Timeaus*. It's notoriously difficult, convoluted, and ripe for repackaging by the "neo-
 1616 Platonists" up to Augustine. In this difficult late dialogue, *Timaeus* the title character,
 1617 a fictional Greek statesman and scientist from southern Italy (ah, as we'll see, surely
 1618 a Pythagorean), who, at yet another get-together, is encouraged by Socrates to tell
 1619 the origins story of the universe. A sort of Greek Carl Sagan. *Timaeus* is less a
 1620 dialogue than a monologue and it covers a lot of ground without Socrates being his
 1621 usual, obnoxious self. Obviously, Plato had a lot on his mind in this book.

1622 Plato was so enamored of mathematics that through Timaeus' voice, he builds
 1623 what he calls a "likely story" of cosmology by mixing geometricized ideas of the
 1624 atomists with a relentlessly Pythagorean numerology (that he learned directly from
 1625 Archytas?), a major focus in Chapter ??.

1626 The universe was assembled (not created) through the actions of a "Craftsman"⁴
 1627 who builds everything—animals, planets, stars—from a blueprint of eternal ideas—
 1628 surely, the Forms and does so using existing materials at hand. He's an artisan,
 1629 more than just a laborer and less than a creative deity.

1630 The dialog begins with Socrates counting, "One, two, three,..." a portending of
 1631 the strange, mystical use of numbers as the Craftsman does his job. I'll reserve the
 1632 astronomy part of *Timaeus* for Chapter ?? and make reference here to only those
 1633 parts of the dialogue that overlap with our project. That leaves most of *Timaeus*
 1634 untouched.

1635 The story begins with fables about Athens of 9000 years previously, among which
 1636 are its war with Atlantis and the idea that Earth is periodically destroyed, erasing
 1637 memories for everyone... but somehow, not the Egyptians. This leads to a discussion
 1638 of how the universe began. Timaeus asks (with Parmenides looking over his
 1639 shoulder?):

1640 What is that which *always is and has no becoming*, and what is that which is *always*
 1641 *becoming and never is*? That which is apprehended by intelligence and reason is always
 1642 in the same state, but that which is conceived by opinion with the help of sensation
 1643 and without reason is always in a process of becoming and perishing and never really
 1644 is." (emphasis, mine) Plato, *Timaeus*

1645 Of course, this is a reference to the Forms ("always is and has no becoming") in
 1646 contrast to particulars and everyday things ("process of becoming and perishing
 1647 and never really is"). In sympathy to Parmenides' poem, Timaeus also tells about
 1648 both kinds of knowledge. This is his stepping off point to the fact that the universe

⁴In Greek, the "Demiurge."

1649 has “become” and so was not always around which implies a creation act or a cause,
1650 or in any case, a creator. That’s the Craftsman’s job who follows a plan which is an
1651 aspirational blueprint.

1652 The universe isn’t created out of nothingness (more Parmenides?) but rather the
1653 Craftsman works with the material at hand using the Forms as a blueprint and
1654 fashions it into an Earth-centric (“geocentric”) model, which we’ll talk about in
1655 the next chapter. Plato leaves the impression that the Craftsman does the best that
1656 he can — a best-effort universe! There is a difficult overall purposefulness and
1657 expectation that the Craftsman is “. . . greatest and best and fairest and most perfect.”
1658 This is the best possible world.

1659 Suffice it to say that the Sun, Moon, and planets all take their familiar places
1660 according to a mathematical (even musical—Pythagoras, again) format and that
1661 Time itself is created along with the planets. In fact the motions of those most-nearly-
1662 perfect celestial bodies is the cause of time. The ancients told the days, months, and
1663 years by the motions of the Sun, planets, and stars and so it’s maybe not a surprise
1664 that Time and those objects have a causal relationship to one another.

1665 **The Craftsman isn’t omnipotent and is restricted to Empedocles’ four elements —**
1666 **the materials at hand. The *Timaeus* outlines the way in which Fire, Water, Air, and**
1667 **Earth go together (again, in proportion) by assigning them solid shapes: Fire is**
1668 **made of tetrahedrons, air is made of octahedrons, water is made of icosahedrons,**
1669 **and finally Earth is made of cubes. The solids themselves are made of two kinds**
1670 **of constituent triangles; the isosceles and scalene triangles. The former is what**
1671 **results from cutting a square into two parts along diagonals and the latter is a**
1672 **triangle in which the hypotenuse is twice the length of the shortest side. Two**
1673 **scalene triangles, side by side, attaching the long sides. . . makes an isosceles**
1674 **triangle. So the atoms (in a modern sense) of the four elements are made of two**
1675 **elementary, triangular constituents (like modern atoms are made of electrons and**
1676 **nuclei): tetrahedrons (4 faces of equilateral triangles), octahedrons (8 faces of**
1677 **equilateral triangles), icosahedrons (20 faces of equilateral triangles), and cubes**
1678 **(12 equilateral faces).**

1679 Water then could be broken down into fire and air as an icosahedron can be de-
1680 composed into two octahedrons of air and one tetrahedron of fire. In fact, that
1681 water evaporates can be modeled in his scheme by noting that two water solids can
1682 geometrically be reduced to five air solids. He’s used up 4 of the 5 known three
1683 dimensional solid forms, historically (but inaccurately) called the Platonic Solids.
1684 So, having bought into a theory, he did what any theoretical physicist would do.
1685 If the solids are fundamental and only 4 of them seem to immediately come to
1686 good use, then there must above a job for the fifth shape, the dodecahedron, and
1687 he assigned that to some measure of the universe itself as it has so many faces, it’s

1688 close to being a sphere?

Plato refers to a form of air as "...the most translucent kind which is called by the name of aether...," but he sticks to the four elements of Empedocles. Aristotle does something similar, but with a twist. There is some ambiguity among the terms "aether,"

1689 "quintessence," and "ether." In this book I'll use the term "ether" to refer the 19th century substance that all thought "carried" the propagation of light waves throughout the universe. "Aether" and "quintessence" are Greek references and are often used interchangeably. In Chapter ?? I'll use "aether" to refer to Aristotle's fifth element.

1690

1691 So, Plato is revealing his Pythagorean biases: The world is geometry—pure, abstract
1692 form. But he's just getting started as his Pythagoreanism knows no bounds as we'll
1693 see when we consider his cosmology in Chapter ??!

Platonism is not just confined to philosophy or mathematics. The Medici family in Renaissance Florence was instrumental in reacquiring Greek philosophical texts from the Byzantine empire by importing Greek-speaking academics. They set up a school dedicated to Greek philosophy and a school for the children of the court. One of those

1694 children was a ward of Lorenzo and would have learned of this approach to the world. So when Michelangelo later noted, "I saw the angel in the marble and carved until I set him free" he was expressing a very Platonic idea that he absorbed as a young ward of Lorenzo di Piero de' Medici, modestly, Lorenzo the Magnificent.

1695

1696 2.1.6 Platonic Legacy

1697 We've covered a lot, but only a little of the large subject that is Plato. I view the
1698 history of physics as ebbing and flowing between Plato's and Aristotle's influence
1699 and out of that I have concluded that our recognizable scientific discipline—my
1700 life's work—didn't happen until the history of physics swerved in the direction
1701 toward Plato and away from Aristotle. So our discussion of the Forms and how the
1702 mathematical picture is illuminated by his conclusion that there are two sorts of
1703 reality is necessary in order to tell the whole story of MOTION. There is one negative
1704 legacy that's more complicated than it's normally presented: the idea of "Saving
1705 the Phenomenon," or "Appearances." This is the statement that is used to assign
1706 this idea to him:

1707 "This was the method I adopted: I first assumed some principle, which I judged
1708 to be the strongest, and then I affirmed as true whatever seemed to agree with this,
1709 whether relating to the cause or to anything else; and that which disagreed I regarded
1710 as untrue." Plato, *Pheado*

1711 It's more complicated than that and people still argue about it. I suspect that there
1712 are four reasons that this seems to lead to that direction:

- 1713 1. Aristotle seems to be critical of that way of thinking (see his statement from
1714 *On the Heavens* below on page ??)
- 1715 2. There's the "armchair astronomy" admonition by Socrates in *Republic*, de-
1716 scribed above.
- 1717 3. There's the fact that his student/colleague Eudoxus takes on the task of
1718 describing the motion of celestial bodies using only circles. This will be
1719 discussed in the next chapter.
- 1720 4. And there's this quotation from *Phaedo*.

1721 The person that was most responsible for making this direct connection to Plato was
1722 the neoPlatonist, Simplicius, who flourished in the 6th century (CE) (He reported
1723 that Plato proposed the problem of finding "by the supposition of what uniform,
1724 circular, and ordered motions the appearances of planetary movements could be
1725 saved.")

1726 In any case, this methodology had legs. Can you see how *unscientific* this is? First
1727 create the theory, and then interpret the facts only to support the theory. This is
1728 especially the case in his astronomy.

1729 As I've hinted, his positive legacy is critical and abstract. His ideas were refor-
1730 mulated a number of times and Neo-Platonism was a pre-medieval version that
1731 eventually found its way into Catholic Church doctrine, much through Augustine,
1732 only to be reassessed centuries later.

1733 What can't be overstated is the influence that Plato had on our project of describing
1734 the universe using mathematics: "Platonism" is an enduring feature of fundamental
1735 physics. Johannes Kepler in the 16th century was among the first truly Platonic
1736 (or even Pythagorean) scientists and as I joked earlier, my particle physics sub-
1737 discipline is very Platonic.

1738 Notice that MOTION has not been a feature of my discussion of Plato. In part, we
1739 think of Plato's ideas about motion as focused on astronomical topics, which we'll
1740 cover later in this chapter. But also his ideas as expressed in *Timaeus* (and to some
1741 extent in the *Laws*) are so esoteric as to be mostly unintelligible. There we learn that
1742 the Soul is responsible in part for "self-motion." It's all very unsatisfying.

1743 "Unsatisfying" is a good stepping-off point as we consider Aristotle and his huge
1744 negative impact on physics. For someone so wrong, it's ironic that we can't ignore
1745 him.

1746 2.2 Act VI A Little Bit of Aristotle

1747 "Aristotle is a Foal. When a foal has had enough milk, it's known that it kicks its
1748 mother." ascribed to Plato

1749 While Plato's practical impact on physics was limited to abstract and esoteric
 1750 notions, not so with **Aristotle of Stagira** (–384 to –322) an even bigger subject. He
 1751 was a systems builder with practicality and abstraction as joint projects. The extent
 1752 of his intellectual reach was incredible and not only did he further philosophical
 1753 ideas, he invented whole fields of science and philosophy.

1754 He was born in Stagira, near Macedonia north of Greece and was connected to
 1755 Macedonian royalty as the son of the king's physician. He emigrated to Greece to
 1756 study at Plato's Academy at the age of 17. . . and then stayed for almost 20 years.
 1757 While he was in residence, probably beginning his writing, the Macedonian King
 1758 Philip II began his conquest of northern Greek cities, including Athens. . . which
 1759 came under his control through concession, and only limited conflict. (Set the
 1760 context with the timeline in Figure ?? on page ??.)

1761 When Plato died in –348, Aristotle went to Assus in the northwestern area of
 1762 modern-day Turkey, married, and began (or continued) an impressive series of
 1763 biological, marine biological, and zoological researches which he wrote about in
 1764 *The History of Animals* and *On the Parts of Animals*. He was a details-person and de-
 1765 scribed animals and insects with minute detail through dissection and description,
 1766 beginning the classification exercise that established the whole science of biology for
 1767 centuries. He classified more than 500 different species into genus and species form-
 1768 ing categories of likeness and habit of mammals, fish, reptiles, and insects. It was
 1769 here that he established his insistence on observation as the source of knowledge,
 1770 an evolution away from Plato that was obviously severe. Think of his approach as
 1771 like taking a deck of cards that's all swirled together on a table, and ordering the
 1772 them all by identifying and sorting for like features—suit, color, and number. That
 1773 kind of organization came naturally to Aristotle, it's very modern, and it seems to
 1774 have first been apparent to him as a scientific practice.

1775 His range was remarkable, covering: Law, physical science, psychology, natural
 1776 science, philosophy, logic, ethics, and the arts. Words that we have from him include:
 1777 energy, dynamic, induction, demonstration, substance, attribute, essence, property,
 1778 accident, category, topic, proposition, universal. . . His metaphysics informed the
 1779 development of his science and confused the awakening Western world from about
 1780 1100 to 1600. And, everything was a part of his system, and so abandoning one
 1781 piece that might not make sense would bring the whole system down. It was a
 1782 philosophical game of Jenga. In particular, his astronomy, and especially his physics,
 1783 didn't make sense and we'll see that the Medievals knew that it didn't make sense.
 1784 But selectively adjusting it seemed impossible.

1785 One positive thing, if only his followers had preserved it: we have Aristotle to
 1786 thank for dampening enthusiasm for the unwelcome Platonic idea of "Saving the
 1787 Phenomena":

1788 "...speaking of phenomena, they say things that do not agree with the phenom-
 1789 ena... They are so fond of their first principles that they seem to behave like those
 1790 who defend theses in dialectical arguments; for they accept any consequence, think-
 1791 ing they have true principles—as though principles should not be judged by their
 1792 consequences..." Aristotle, *On the Heavens*

1793 We have three Aristotelian issues to consider for our narrow project which together
 1794 only sample a small sliver of his whole universe: what is real, how does change
 1795 happen, and his physical science.

1796 2.2.1 Aristotle and What's Real and What's Knowledge?

1797 Unlike Plato, Aristotle rejected the idea of a super-sensible realm housing the ethe-
 1798 real Forms. He had a different job for his Form that linked it with actual substance,
 1799 here on Earth, closer to our idea of the form of a physical object. His focus—which
 1800 was refreshing after the Parmenides Problem and now the Plato Problem—was
 1801 on *individual things* which we learn about through a personal experience with the
 1802 world, not through some intellectual abstraction. What's real for him are *particular*
 1803 *objects*.

1804 "If we did not perceive anything we would not learn or understand anything." Aris-
 1805 totle, *On the Soul*

1806 Like I said, refreshing.

1807 Substance—stuff—and Form work together to make the world. The oft-used
 1808 metaphor of a house is instructive. In order to make a house you need stuff—
 1809 wood, nails, and so on—and a plan, an organizing principle. Substance and Form.
 1810 An individual thing is then matter which has been given a form and you can't
 1811 separate them. An individual thing must have both.

1812 For Aristotle, perceived facts are the necessary ingredients for knowledge. We
 1813 organize them in our memories, looking for commonalities and differences. We
 1814 categorize our facts into bins of like and unlike with relationships among them.
 1815 We have an individual perception of things, collect facts, ruminate on them by
 1816 comparing in our memory with our internal database, and categorize. This is
 1817 classical Empiricism, as opposed to Plato's classical Rationalism. So far, so good.
 1818 (Think about that deck of cards, now abstracted as a philosophical goal.)

1819 2.2.2 Change and Cause

1820 But we still can't get away from the Parmenides Problem and Aristotle also did
 1821 battle with change and permanence. Let's race through how he thought about
 1822 change and how it functioned in his physics.

1823 For him, Change relieves a . . . tension. An actual thing, what **is**, has within it the
 1824 potential to become something new. As long as it's not in that newer state—it's
 1825 "deprived" —and it is obligated to go there. Inevitably. So everything is also in a
 1826 Hericlitean flux, but in a very particular and interesting way. In sympathy, perhaps,
 1827 with Parmenides, in order for something to change into something else, it had to **be**
 1828 in the first place and taking that all the way back, takes him into an abstract place
 1829 where there needed to have been an original Unmoved Mover. We'll not follow that
 1830 line of thought.

1831 What's important about change for Aristotle, which fits into his bigger system,
 1832 is that in order to acquire knowledge of something that changes means you can
 1833 identify the Cause of change. Because: *all change must be caused* and what can
 1834 be caused comes from within a set of Aristotelian "Categories" (of being). The
 1835 ten Categories is a complicated idea and we'll skim. They are: substance, quality,
 1836 quantity, relation, time, place, position, state, activity, and passivity — his complete
 1837 set of predicates that can be assigned in a statement. For example, what can you say
 1838 about Galileo:

- 1839 • Galileo was human (substance)
- 1840 • Galileo was smart (quality)
- 1841 • Galileo was 5 feet tall (quantity)
- 1842 • Galileo was older than Kepler (relation)
- 1843 • Galileo lived during the 16th and 17th centuries (time)
- 1844 • Galileo lived in Florence (place)
- 1845 • Galileo sometimes sat at his desk (position)
- 1846 • Galileo sometimes wore shoes (state)
- 1847 • Galileo sometimes wrote with a pen (activity)
- 1848 • Galileo was sometimes ill (passivity)

1849 A particular substance must be all of these things in order to be a thing. In order to
 1850 exist. Like I said, you have to be impressed with Aristotle's ability to take a complex
 1851 topic and break it into its constituents. Remember, he invented Logic.

1852 " Nature is a principle of motion and change, and it is the subject of our inquiry. We
 1853 must therefore see that we understand what motion is; for if it were unknown, nature
 1854 too would be unknown." Aristotle, *Physics*

1855 Substances have "motions" but not the kind you're thinking of. They're very Greek
 1856 motions and can be quite abstract. For Aristotle, *motion is anything that goes to*
 1857 *something*. In this change a substance remains a substance, but Form adjusts,
 1858 characterizing the natural evolution of a state in which a goal is not achieved into a
 1859 state in which a goal is achieved. And that idea of a "goal" is very important and in
 1860 part, where Aristotle's physics goes astray. So the substance of a seed changes as it
 1861 evolves into a flower. But the form of the seed and its various guises changes. Stay

1862 with me.

1863 Motions can be of any of the Categories of being, but usually are among just three
1864 of them:

- 1865 • change of quality
- 1866 • change of quantity
- 1867 • change of place

1868 For example:

- 1869 • Galileo changed from a boy to a man. That's a change of quality.
- 1870 • Galileo changed from a person who weighed 50 pounds to a person who
1871 weighed 150 pounds. That's a change of quantity.
- 1872 • Galileo moved from Padua to Florence. That's a change of place.

1873 That last one, a change of place, is our modern idea of "motion" which he called
1874 "locomotion." But for him, locomotion is no more fundamental than any other kind
1875 of motion and that's very Greek. But, again, he's thought deeply and by accident,
1876 all three kinds of motion have examples today:

- 1877 • Modern Change of Place: We tend to think of locomotion as the only one of
1878 his categories to apply to change in physics: objects moving from this place to
1879 that place, during some time.

1880 That's familiar. But two of his other "motions" have modern examples which he
1881 would not have known of:

- 1882 • Modern Change of Quality: A phase transition like water boiling or freezing
1883 could be considered a change of quality.
- 1884 • Modern Change of Quantity: Aristotle could not have imagined a nuclear or
1885 particle decay from one thing into three different things, like the decay of a
1886 neutron into a proton, electron, and neutrino.

1887 As for goals, it's easiest to think of the nature of something and that involves
1888 potentiality and deprivation. An acorn becomes a oak tree. An acorn does not
1889 become a Galileo, so it has within it the potential only to be an oak from the
1890 beginning. That inevitability also is universal and directed and that even becomes an
1891 argument against infinity since there is no such thing as unrealized or unconstrained
1892 potential.

1893 "It is not what has nothing outside that is infinite, but what always has something
1894 outside it." Aristotle, *Physics*

1895 Now we know what properties a thing must have in order to exist and we know
1896 what kinds of change can happen. Again, to have knowledge of a change one must

1897 understand the causes: in fact, four causes. They are the material cause, the efficient
1898 cause, the formal cause, and the final cause.

1899 Take a that house:

- 1900 • The material cause of the house is the wood, nails, and so on.
- 1901 • The efficient cause of the house is the action of the carpenter.
- 1902 • The formal cause of the house is the blueprint in the mind of the carpenter.
- 1903 • The final cause of the house is the purpose for which it was made.

1904 There is sometimes a discussion about whether these function as causation or
1905 explanation. Are they the four “because”s? In any case, the last one of them is
1906 problematic for physics as the notion that everything moves for a purpose (that
1907 “goal” again) doesn’t work in modern terms. This is called “teleological.” (One can
1908 imagine an argument for Aristotle that there is some teleological logic to how plants
1909 and animals “move” from one kind to another... seeds to plants, kittens to cats, and
1910 so on.) Of the four (and there’s a lot more detail in Aristotle than just enumerating
1911 them), Efficient Cause comes the closest to a modern physics cause. That’s splitting
1912 hairs!

1913 2.2.3 Aristotle’s Physics

1914 Aristotle inherited his ontology (the philosophy of being) from his teacher, who
1915 inherited it from Empedocles. That is the four elements of earth, air, fire, and water
1916 are supplemented by one more, “aether” which is outside of the earth-bound region
1917 of the universe. Like the reactions to Parmenides, Aristotle envisions “stuff” as
1918 mixtures of the four elements. But he goes further than just classification, as their
1919 makeup, Causes, and Categories all feed into his explanation for the sort of motion
1920 that we think of. So understanding locomotion is intimately tied to the entirety of
1921 the Aristotelean system.

1922 With respect to our familiar MOTION, he was very much an empiricist and locomo-
1923 tion in particular fits his overall philosophy. Watch a high kick of a soccer ball or
1924 a towering home run in baseball or a shot in the shot-put. The projectile will race
1925 to the top of its trajectory and then appear to fall steeper and faster than its rise.
1926 Drop a feather and a crumpled up piece of paper and a metal key. Will they hit the
1927 ground at the same time?

1928 In each of these everyday examples it seems like the heavier object will hit the
1929 ground first. That fits his philosophy, or maybe his philosophy grew from watching
1930 things fall since the heavier an object is, the more deprived it is of its most natural
1931 place: the Earth. So any object seeks its place by virtue of the amount of earthiness it
1932 has in its composition. Heaviness is an attribute and the natural motion associated
1933 with heaviness is down, toward the center of the Earth. *Lightness is also an attribute*

1934 for Aristotle (for us, that's just less heaviness). Natural motion for a Light object
 1935 is up, toward the sky. So, below the orbit of the Moon, objects have two kinds of
 1936 natural motion:

- 1937 • Natural locomotion for heavy objects is down and natural motion for light
 1938 objects is up. These Earth-bound motions — MOTION ON THE EARTH — both
 1939 follow straight lines toward their preferred places. So firey things want to be
 1940 at the edge of the Moon's orbit and earthy things want to be at the center of
 1941 the universe (the Earth).

1942 But MOTION IN THE HEAVENS of the Sun, Moon, planets, and stars don't move in
 1943 straight lines and have no apparent pushing force, so they must be composed of
 1944 different stuff from Earth, Water, Air, or Fire and have a different sort of natural
 1945 motion:

- 1946 • Cosmic objects are made of "aether" and have circular natural motion.

1947 Like all motions, Earth-bound objects away from their natural places are deprived
 1948 and realization of their potential is to . . . go there. Celestial objects move naturally
 1949 in circles. To fulfill their essence.

1950 There is another kind of locomotion which is un-natural, dubbed "violent," and for
 1951 Aristotle what causes violent motion must be a contact force. So throwing a ball is
 1952 violent and unnatural, since it's not directed down. When the ball is in contact with
 1953 your hand, you're making it move. When it leaves your hand? Well, here Aristotle
 1954 had trouble and everyone knew it. The contortions that he went through to explain
 1955 projectiles are pretty contrived. But he was wedded to his system and in spite of his
 1956 scorn for Plato's *Saving the Phenomenon*, he seems all about that here.

1957 When the ball leaves your hand, it doesn't immediately head towards the center of
 1958 the Earth. The medium of the air is critical in two ways:

- 1959 1. The motion of the hand is (somehow) transferred to the air which (somehow)
 1960 successively creates forces in steps. . . air moves the projectile, then another
 1961 segment of air moves the projectile. . . and so on until the ability of the air to
 1962 perform that critical contact-force job is used up. Somehow the forces of air
 1963 meet some dissipative force. . . of the air(!), and it stops.
- 1964 2. Then the object falls directly to the ground because the air stops it.

1965 The air both moves it and stops it! Also, the projectile doesn't share both unnatural,
 1966 forced motion and a component of natural, downward motion. There's a lot not to
 1967 like about this. Even probably including Aristotle given his complicated explanation.
 1968 Figure ?? is a 16th century depiction of Aristotle's projectile paths: straight line up,
 1969 then straight line down.

1970 Now he's not entirely consistent in his descriptions. In his *Physics*, he says:

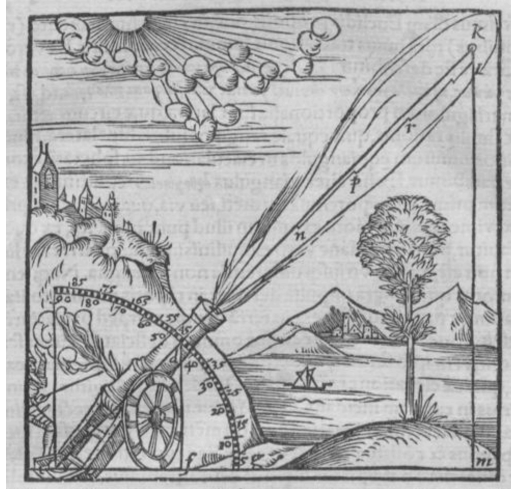


Figure 2.2: A drawing of Aristotelian projectile motion in a mathematics text by Daniel Santbech in 1561.

1971 "Again, as it is, things thrown continue to move, though that which impelled them is
 1972 no longer in contact with them, either because of "mutual replacement" as some say, or
 1973 because the air which has been thrust forward thrusts them with a movement quicker
 1974 than the motion by which the object thrown is carried to its proper place." Aristotle,
 1975 *Physics*, IV, 8

1976 Later in Book VIII he says:

1977 "Therefore, we must say that the original mover gives the power of being a mover...
 1978 to air... naturally adapted for imparting and undergoing motion... The motion
 1979 ceases when the motive force produced in one member of the consecutive series [of
 1980 forces imparted by the air] is at each stage less, and it finally ceases when one member
 1981 no longer causes the next member to be a mover but only causes it to be in motion.
 1982 The motion of these last two—of the one as mover and of the other as moved—must
 1983 cease simultaneously, and with this the whole motion ceases.

1984 The first extract seems to make reference to an idea that's in *Theaetetus* called an-
 1985 tiperistasis, in which Plato tries to explain respiration, suction, and falling bodies as
 1986 displacing the air and back-filling it to avoid a vacuum. This either evolved too, or
 1987 was also a suggestion by Aristotle that the air in front of a ball rushed around to the
 1988 back and pushed the ball forward. I know. It makes no sense. The Medievals were
 1989 very critical and modified the ideas.

1990 Aristotle didn't know algebra, but we can most easily summarize his points with
 1991 some simple proportions. The mathematical symbol for "proportional to" is \sim .

1992 He would describe the locomotion of a projectile with these ideas:

1993 • Heavier objects (made of more earth than other elements and so highly de-

1994 prived of its natural place) would fall faster than light objects: $t \sim \frac{1}{W}$ where
 1995 W is the weight, a stand-in for earthiness. Heavier objects would then fall
 1996 faster than light objects —have a higher velocity.

1997 • He had some sense of the resistance of air and so the velocity relates to weight
 1998 and resistance as $v \sim \frac{W}{R}$ where R is some measure of the resistance that air or
 1999 water or some medium asserts on the falling object.

2000 • This leads to a convenient conclusion. If there is no resistance, then $R = 0$ and
 2001 the speed that if falls would become infinite. But nothing can be infinite in
 2002 Aristotle's philosophy, so there is no vacuum allowed. . . no medium with zero
 2003 resistance.

2004 • And finally, for violent motion, which requires an external force in contact
 2005 with the object, $v \sim \frac{F}{R}$. No force, no speed. More force, more speed.

2006 Each of the bullets describe exactly what you and I experience every day in a sport
 2007 with a ball or just life. Aristotle is clearly a champion Empiricist.

2008 There's more. If linear motion is the only natural motion then his Earth *must be*
 2009 *stationary* otherwise, we'd would feel the effects of some tangential wind-force
 2010 rotating the Earth. And we don't, so his Earth *does not rotate*. For objects in the
 2011 heavens, since they move naturally but in circles, a different material is required, a
 2012 fifth-element.

2013 2.2.4 Summary of Aristotle and Locomotion

2014 So to sum up the first real study of MOTION... ever.

2015 1. MOTION ON THE EARTH is of two types:

2016 1. Natural motions are toward or away from the center of the Earth accord-
 2017 ing to the degree of heaviness (among the four elements, Earth would
 2018 dominate the others) or lightness (among the four elements, fire would
 2019 dominate the others) that compose their substance. Natural motions are
 2020 in straight lines. They represent the fulfillment of an object's potential.

2021 2. Unnatural, or violent motions are those which are not natural. They all
 2022 require that an external force is applied throughout whatever trajectory
 2023 a body experiences. Take away the force, and the motion would cease.
 2024 These motions can be of any shape.

2025 2. And MOTION BY THE EARTH?

2026 1. It's zero. The Earth is stationary because no forces can be detected that
 2027 would be required to make it move. And, motion on the Earth doesn't
 2028 suggest that the Earth is moving. Throw a ball up and it doesn't fall
 2029 behind you, as he suggested would be the case if the Earth were moving.
 2030 So he has an explanation as to why it must be stationary, but not a

2031 prediction. He's justifying his contention.

2032 3. And MOTION IN THE HEAVENS?

2033 1. That motion is circular. Objects outside of the Moon's orbit are of an
2034 entirely different substance than what we experience: aether. Why? Since
2035 if they were of the same material as that of and on the Earth, its natural
2036 motion would be in straight lines.⁵

2037 Aristotle's theories of MOTION BY THE EARTH, MOTION ON THE EARTH, and MO-
2038 TION IN THE HEAVENS are relentlessly empirical: they are theories of what we
2039 all observe in our everyday lives. His theories of motion are wrong, relentlessly
2040 abstract, and hidebound to the rules by his overarching philosophy.

2041 **2.2.5 Plato and Aristotle on LIGHT**

2042 **2.3 Plato and Aristotle, Today**

2043 **2.3.1 Modern Day Platonists**

2044 "I imagine that whenever the mind perceives a mathematical idea, it makes contact
2045 with Plato's world of mathematical concepts. . . When mathematicians communicate,
2046 this is made possible by each one having a direct route to truth, the consciousness of
2047 each being in a position to perceive mathematical truths directly, through this process
2048 of "seeing." ' Roger Penrose (1931-), theoretical physicist, Nobel Laureate

2049 It's unlikely that anyone today would wonder about the application of Aristotelian-
2050 ism into the physics of MOTION ON THE EARTH, MOTION BY THE EARTH, nor
2051 MOTION IN THE HEAVENS but thousands of pages of writing (and links) have been
2052 devoted to the application of Platonism into modern physics, and especially in
2053 mathematics. Recall my party-question in the previous chapter: Is mathematics
2054 discovered or invented? Many mathematicians and physicists have concluded that
2055 it's discovered and that's the bumper-sticker version of modern Platonism: suitable
2056 for the 21st century.

2057 In this *Plato and Aristotle, Today* section I'll describe a more modern version of
2058 Platonism that might function in physics in two different aspects which I'll call "The
2059 Platonic Process in Physics" and "The Platonic Reality in Physics." It's about an
2060 evolved notion of the Forms.

2061 **2.3.2 The Platonic Process in Physics**

2062 The Forms were by far the Platonic idea with impact for all branches of philosophy,
2063 mathematics, and physics. His premise is that reality consists, not of only everyday
2064 stuff (that's the Ionian "monist" position that all of reality is made of matter) but that

⁵some circular reasoning there, no pun intended

2065 there is an additional reality-realm which consists of non-material entities outside
 2066 of space and time. This is the premise of the movie *The Matrix* in which Morpheus
 2067 gives Neo the choice of two pills: if he takes the blue pill, he's choosing to continue
 2068 to live his life in an artificial but comfortable world in which we don't examine
 2069 what's true and happily accept opinion as knowledge. If he takes the red pill, he's
 2070 chosen the more difficult path: to live in the truth. The references to the *Allegory*
 2071 *of the Cave* are obvious, but it's also the old biblical story of eating from the Tree of
 2072 Knowledge.

2073 Paying homage to Morpheus' red and blue pills, let's call our everyday, physical
 2074 world, the **Blue World** (BW) and the ethereal, maybe more truthful world, the **Red**
 2075 **World** (RW...in order to help us remember, think of it also as the "Real World.").
 2076 And let me try to suggest that to be a modern physicist is to be partly a Platonist,
 2077 working as if the BW and the RW both exist simultaneously. Stay with me.

2078 Plato's classical RW is where the Forms reside in which they had two broad charac-
 2079 teristics:

- 2080 1. For Plato, forms exist in the RW which are permanent, outside of space and
 2081 time, and represent the essences of all things and ideas. All objects in the BW
 2082 — objects we would call physical objects — "participate" in the Forms. My
 2083 example was the perfect sofa.
- 2084 2. The RW contains the only true things and so acquiring Truth (with a capital
 2085 "T") means somehow realizing the Forms in their natural, unusual habitat
 2086 uniquely through our intellect.

2087 So Plato's is both a story about ontology (the philosophy of what exists) and episte-
 2088 mology (the philosophy of what we can know).

2089 The heated debates of the last 50 years about Platonism are largely about mathe-
 2090 matics. In this literature it's not hard to find questions like whether the reality of a
 2091 tree is different from the reality of $\sqrt{2}$. In some way, the latter is more permanent.
 2092 And, of course, there are also the perfect objects of geometry...and maybe the rules
 2093 of geometry. I think it's fair to generalize that there are three schools of thought in
 2094 the Philosophy of Mathematics that can be labeled as:

- 2095 • Intuitionism, where mathematics is just the product of mental activity and a
 2096 mathematical entity is constructed by the mind and lives solely in the mind.
 2097 This is also sometimes called "structuralism" or "constructivism."
- 2098 • Formalism, is probably the most popular camp in which there is no truth-
 2099 value assigned to any mathematical property or entity. It's all just the study
 2100 of logical consequences... dubbed "if-thenism." There's no commitment to
 2101 anything beyond manipulating marks on paper according to the rules of the
 2102 game.

- 2103 • Platonism, suggests that mathematics is the study of abstract entities that have
 2104 an existence that's as real as the external world targets of scientific experiment.
 2105 So the question for Platonism is: do abstract mathematical things exist? Do
 2106 abstract rules exist?

2107 2.3.2.1 Quine–Putnam Indispensability Argument

2108 I've had the misfortune... or fortune... of doing physics research for half a century
 2109 after a masters degree in the philosophy of science. That means that I've never been
 2110 able to avoid standing back and looking at what I do and what my colleagues do
 2111 and categorizing and analyzing process, what counts as a valid argument, what
 2112 counts as a valid scientific question, and what counts as an acceptable answer. And
 2113 what about "reality"?

2114 I'm intrigued with a particular strand of Platonism that's due to **Willard Quine**
 2115 (1908- 2000) in the 1950s through 1990's, and **Hilary Putnam** (1926-2016), who
 2116 later found common cause with Quine. Together, their ideas are called the **Quine–**
 2117 **Putnam Indispensability Argument**. To an aw-shucks, country-physicist like
 2118 myself, I interpret it to say:

- 2119 1. Science (read "physics") works and interacts with real objects in the BW
 2120 through experiments.
- 2121 2. Mathematics works and interacts with abstract quantities and rules in the RW.
- 2122 3. Physics cannot not work without mathematics, and so the two are *indispensable*.
 2123 This is a partial answer to Wigner. "Unreasonable effectiveness" becomes
 2124 "indispensability."
- 2125 4. Given the impossibility of physics without mathematics, abstract
 2126 mathematical-physics entities in the RW should enjoy the same level
 2127 of reality as the objects of experiment in the BW.
- 2128 5. So there are at least two realities: a physical reality and a mathematical reality.

2129 The Quine–Putnam Indispensability Argument both rhymes with Wigner and
 2130 demands a new definition of physics.

2131 "[talk of" mathematical entities is indispensable for science... therefore we should
 2132 accept such talk... [which] commits us to **accepting the existence of the mathematical**
 2133 **entities in question** [emphasis mine]." **putnam1971**, *Philosophy of Logic*.

2134 Quine called himself a "reluctant Platonist" and I think that physics has joined
 2135 that club. And as I'll show in Chapter ??, Galileo was the charter member and
 2136 he showed us all how to make progress in unraveling MOTION BY THE EARTH,
 2137 MOTION ON THE EARTH, and MOTION IN THE HEAVENS once the club's Platonism
 2138 was embraced.

2139 A few random comments about the Quine–Putnam Indispensability Argument.

- 2140 • Do I have to be a believer in order to do physics? No. You might be surprised
 2141 how little philosophical thinking goes into a professional physics education.
 2142 Long ago, the pain inherent in thinking too hard about, first quantum mechan-
 2143 ics and then general relativity taught those of us who teach these subject to
 2144 undergraduate and graduate students to not go there. “Shut up and calculate”
 2145 is not just a funny phrase, it’s actually an instruction that you must follow if
 2146 you’re going to make scientific progress. We physicists don’t tend to analyze
 2147 physics any more than a bird analyzes the dynamics of flight.
- 2148 • Where does this leave mathematics and their philosophical problems? Well,
 2149 first, we pretty much don’t care! Second, Mathematical Platonism adherents
 2150 think it’s perfectly fine for there to be a plethora of mathematical realities.
 2151 A multi-verse of mathematical worlds, if you will. Some of them have that
 2152 special connection with physics...and some of them don’t.
- 2153 • I’ve concluded that we are relentlessly *both* Platonic and Pythagorean. We
 2154 can’t make progress nor explain the incredible success we’ve enjoyed without
 2155 the rules of physics (the “laws”) nor without the commitment to the numbers
 2156 required to make predictions and then contact with experiment. The Platonic
 2157 is joined with the Pythagorean, in contrast to Plato’s Divided Line, the division
 2158 is blurred and crossable.
- 2159 • Is it just too unreasonable (sorry) to deal with this multiple reality stuff? A
 2160 reasonable person might say that if I can touch it or kick it, then it’s real. A
 2161 pretty good working definition of “reality.” Stay with me.

2162 2.3.3 The Platonic Reality in Physics

2163 What I described above is about a *process*. But there’s also an “ontology.” What are
 2164 the objects of fundamental physics and do they live in the BW or the RW? Let’s look
 2165 at two objects and then go kick a rock.

2166 2.3.3.1 Their Own Forms

2167 There is no sofa that’s identical to its form. Even two sofas designed and constructed
 2168 in the same manufacturing facility will not be identical. Patterns on one will be
 2169 slightly altered from the other. Tolerances on color or fabric structure or leg shape
 2170 cannot be perfect. A BW sofa is not identical to it’s RW Form. They’re separated
 2171 into the two Realms.

2172 The 20th century has upended this very Platonic separation and Plato might have
 2173 been intrigued with the result.

2174 A molecule of hemoglobin in your blood contains 10,000 atoms of hydrogen, oxygen,
 2175 nitrogen, and iron. Each of these atoms have protons, neutrons, and electrons. Isn’t

2176 it remarkable that each of the many thousands of electrons in that single hemoglobin
2177 molecule are identical to one another?

2178 Isn't it even more remarkable that each of those electrons in my blood is absolutely
2179 identical to an electron in an atom of hydrogen in the outer edges of the Andromeda
2180 Galaxy? Or to every electron that was flying around the early universe before
2181 Hydrogen atoms formed at 370,000 years after the big bang. (I might note that every
2182 hydrogen atom in your hemoglobin was in fact formed in the big bang.)

2183 A perfect form of an electron — the ideal electron in the RW— is identical to its BW
2184 counterpart electron. No imperfection. No difference.

2185 So the distinction between Forms and the objects in the BW that participate in the
2186 Forms evaporates as soon as we begin to deal with elementary particles. That is,
2187 when we begin to confront the universe as it is composed in the BW.

▷ Elementary particles in our everyday BW are their own Platonic Forms.

2188 2.3.3.2 Are Wavefunctions BW Or RW Or Not Real At All?

2189 Want some serious Plato? I give you Quantum Mechanics, the theory of the
2190 very small: atoms, electrons, nuclei, elementary particles, and quantum fields.
2191 Atoms and all of chemistry is precisely determined by a single equation called the
2192 Schrödinger Equation which can be solved to determine the "state" of an atom
2193 and make predictions about properties of matter. For example, the model of the
2194 optical spectra that result from electrons falling from high orbits to low ones by
2195 emitting unique colors of light is the first prediction of quantum atomic theory and
2196 was bang-on correct. Quantum mechanics is exquisitely precise and its predictions
2197 match experimental results to mind-boggling precision. It works better than any
2198 theory ever invented.

2199 But Quantum Mechanics comes with a very strange substance that we cannot see,
2200 hear, touch, or measure. We arrive at predictions by calculating the evolution of the
2201 spooky entity called the "wave function," ψ . The wave function seems to me to be
2202 the very definition of a RW-existent, mathematical entity. Essential to the physics,
2203 but with an existence on paper only—a very Quine-Putnam idea.

2204 We predict the results of an experiment involving atoms, molecules, or elections
2205 by mathematically evolving their wavefunctions using the Schrödinger Equation
2206 which takes $\psi(t_1)$ at some time, t_1 and tells you precisely how $\psi(t_2)$ will behave at
2207 time t_2 in the future. This works perfectly. Every time.

2208 But here's the rub: ψ is *intrinsically undetectable*. It doesn't exist in the BW, but it
2209 does have a communicable existence as mathematical marks on paper. We make a

2210 connection in the BW by predicting the *probability* that a particle will be here... or
 2211 there... or over there... or on the Moon. That comes from the *square of the wave-*
 2212 *function, ψ^2* . Remember that party you un-livened up with the question about
 2213 mathematics? Ask two physicists in attendance, "Is the wavefunction real?" Then
 2214 stand back. That will liven it back up.

2215 Let me repeat: we can calculate the value of ψ at any time or place in the future, but
 2216 to connect with a measurement, we can only predict probabilities, no certainties
 2217 are allowed. Ever. We cannot get from the equations of Quantum Mechanics to a
 2218 measurement in the BW without passing through a RW Platonic manipulation of
 2219 the mathematical entity, ψ .

2220 If you ever needed a definition of a mathematical entity that behaves as if it has a
 2221 reality only in the Intelligible Realm, the wavefunction, ψ , is the poster child for
 2222 exactly that. For Quantum Mechanics to function, we must work wholly inside of a
 2223 very strange mathematical RW which indispensably (in that Quine-Putnam sense)
 2224 is very real. And Quantum Mechanics works better than any theory ever devised in
 2225 any science.⁶

2226 So every entity in physics is ultimately an elementary particle, which is its own
 2227 Platonic Form and which is described by a mathematical entity which cannot be
 2228 observed.

2229 2.3.3.3 "I refute him thus!"

2230 In a different context, it was the British writer of the *Dictionary* Dr. Samuel Johnson
 2231 claimed to be able to refute the Idealism of Bishop Berkeley that to be real was to
 2232 be observed. He kicked a rock and declared, "I refute him thus!" Well, there's a lot
 2233 inside of a rock.

2234 It's quite natural to insist, "I know there's a real world out here because I can see
 2235 and touch stuff!" Okay, let's talk about touching. That rock that you kicked with
 2236 your foot is not a solid hunk of stuff. It's made of minerals in crystalline structures
 2237 of definite chemical elements: atoms with electrons in their atomic shells which
 2238 have complicated bonding with their "home" nucleus and across the crystals with
 2239 neighboring atoms. Your foot is made up mostly water in cells and tissues, so, of
 2240 course, different atoms in different arrangements.

2241 These atoms of the "kick-er" and the "kick-ee" interact with one another as you bring
 2242 your foot very, very close—molecularly close. There would be some deformation of
 2243 the two materials (to your foot's disadvantage) since the rock's lattice is relatively
 2244 rigid in comparison to the tissues of your foot. But what's going on? The electrons

⁶Einstein famously washed his hands of Quantum Mechanics, immensely uncomfortable with its lack of certainty, related to the reliance on the wavefunction. And he was one of its inventors!

2245 at the surface of your foot are repelled by the electrons in the outer orbits of the
 2246 atoms at the surface of the rock. And to make it even more complicated, there's a
 2247 region of quantum mechanical attraction and repulsion that is active between the
 2248 whole molecules of the two materials called the "Van der Waals force." So *your*
 2249 *kick is inherently a quantum mechanical process and is as real as the wavefunction* of the
 2250 previous section, and the electrons and photons of the section before that. You think
 2251 you kicked a solid thing that's a rock in the BW, *but what you did was cause a quantum*
 2252 *mechanical interaction only describable in our RW.*

2253 Again. As practicing physicists do we stay up at night worrying about the different
 2254 realities that our description of nature presents to us? Or do we just keep on
 2255 calculating...because it works. For almost all of us, it's the latter. We're actually
 2256 all trained to be highly skilled "Quantum Mechanics" seemingly working in the
 2257 BW of experiment, without concern for the philosophical niceties of the RW of the
 2258 equations. This is the same as a skilled engine mechanic working under the hood
 2259 of your car who doesn't need to know the material science or engineering of the
 2260 digital electronics of the engine and control systems to solve BW problems.

2261 But Plato is there. He's changed his mind about a few things, but when it comes
 2262 to philosophical longevity—when it comes to physics—he outlasted Aristotle. By
 2263 millennia. But Aristotle also had his moment. Take out your phone.

2264 2.3.4 Aristotle's Legacy in Physics and Engineering

2265 Aristotle invented the iPhone. Well, not exactly all of it, but he created the basic
 2266 language that all electronics use to process instructions and communicate internally.
 2267 This language allows digital components in integrated circuits to do arithmetic,
 2268 compare number strings, turn peripherals on and off like pixels on a screen, and
 2269 many other functions. All of this comes from seemingly endless strings of logical
 2270 operations performed by mind-boggling numbers of individual digital "gates" of
 2271 silicon which do very simple things.

2272 You see, Aristotle invented that language and I think that's his modern legacy:
 2273 Aristotle first conceived of the rules of **Formal Logic** which were so powerful, they
 2274 instantly became active research projects for ancient and medieval philosophers for
 2275 a thousand years. "Logic" is now the primary subject in whole fields: Philosophy of
 2276 Logic, Discrete Mathematics, and Computer Engineering! If winning an argument
 2277 is important and if you can reliably create valid arguments and always identify
 2278 invalid ones, then you possess a superpower.⁷ That was his goal. Making that

⁷We'll see in Chapter ?? the re-discovery and use of Aristotle's Logic was arguably the major threat to the dogmatic Augustinian Catholic Church in the 12th century. An uneasy truce was pieced together by Thomas Aquinas by the 13th century.

2279 superpower. For a more detailed introduction to the field of Formal Logic, see
2280 Technical Appendix ?? Here I just want to hit some broad ideas.

2281 2.3.4.1 Valid, Invalid, and Sound Arguments

2282 In the courtroom, the board room, in science, and everyday life having the facts in
2283 hand is only part of a winning strategy to persuade others. Your argument has to
2284 be, we colloquially say, “logical.” We all have a sense of what that means, but it
2285 can be nuanced. Let’s look at two examples of arguments. Notice that I’ve added
2286 parentheses that demarcate important phrase chunks in each of the three lines.

2287 Example 1.

- 2288 • (All apples)(are fruit)
- 2289 • (All red objects in that tree) (are apples)
- 2290 • Therefore, (All red objects in that tree) (are fruit)

2291 Example 1. hits you right, I’ll bet. This is the kind of argument called a Syllogism
2292 consisting of two *premises* followed by a *conclusion*. Here’s another one:

2293 Example 2.

- 2294 • (All elephants)(are English speakers)
- 2295 • (All squirrels) (are elephants)
- 2296 • Therefore, (All squirrels) (are English speakers)

2297 Now Example 2. kind of hurts. These seem like very different arguments and you’d
2298 want to say that that this second one is absurd or wrong—more about that in a bit.
2299 But can you see that they share an important feature: they are both structured in
2300 the same way—they have the same **form**. Try this:

2301 Example 3.

- 2302 • (All A)(are B)
- 2303 • (All C) (are A)
- 2304 • Therefore, (All C) (are B)

2305 This shows the structure of both arguments.
2306 In both examples we can identify: A = ap-
2307 ples/elephants, B = fruit/English speakers,
2308 and C = red objects in that tree/squirrels.
2309 Many substitutions will work for A, B, or C
2310 if the premises and conclusion are arranged
2311 like the above.

2312 There’s more: in any argument arranged as
2313 in Example 3. the conclusion is “forced” on

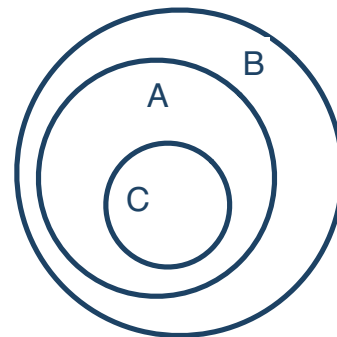


Figure 2.3: In a valid argument shows that one is forced to conclude that All C are B.

2314 you. The easiest way to see that is to look
2315 carefully at the “Euler Diagram” in Figure ??.

2316 Can you see that in Figure ?? there are three circular areas, the biggest of which is B.
2317 All of region A is inside of the bigger region B so the first premise that (All A)(are
2318 B) is evident and that all of C is inside of A, so the second premise that (All C) (are
2319 A) is evident. So from the picture you forcefully conclude that (All C) (are B)—the
2320 conclusion of Example 1. You’re worried about talking elephants. Stay tuned.

2321 2.3.4.2 Greatest gift

2322 Aristotle’s unique invention that makes general rules possible for argumentation
2323 was to create what I think of as an *algebra of language*. Here is a seminal moment in
2324 history, from the first book of his *Prior Analytics* (focus on the last sentences):

2325 “...if every B is A then some A is B. For if no A were B, then no B could be A....e.g. **let**
2326 **B stand for animal and A for man. Not every animal is a man; but every man is an**
2327 **animal.**” (emphasis, mine) Aristotle, *Prior Analytics*.

2328 Look at the sentences that I’ve highlighted: he’s using variables A and B, to stand
2329 for things, here in his example, A = man and B = animal. Instead of men and
2330 animals, the variables could be squirrels or fruit. As long as the *form* is proper, we
2331 say that the argument is “valid.”

2332 Let’s be clear—because Logic is all about clarity and bottom-up reasoning. We all
2333 use words that sometimes have specific meanings in specialize fields like Logic.
2334 Here are some that I’ll make use of in this section. Some definitions for us:

- 2335 • Here, we will use the term *statement* as a kind of a sentence which can be
2336 true or false. “Elephants are larger than squirrels.” is a true statement. “All
2337 bachelors are talking squirrels” is a false statement.
- 2338 • When a statement includes a “quantifier” (an example of which is “all”), a
2339 subject, a connective (often called a copula, a form of the verb “to be”), and
2340 a predicate we’ll refer to these as *propositions*. (All apples are fruit.) is a true
2341 *proposition*.
- 2342 • Not all sentences are *statements* or *propositions*. Our two here are aimed at
2343 logical argumentation.
- 2344 • *Statements* and *propositions* can be true or false.
- 2345 • We will use the term *Arguments* in two ways. In this subsection, a *Syllogistic*
2346 *argument* will stand as an ordered collection of *propositions* (here, the *premises*
2347 of the argument). As we saw, Syllogistic arguments are constructed as specific
2348 forms. (In the next section, we’ll refer to a different kind of argument, a
2349 *Propositional argument*.)
- 2350 • Syllogisms were Aristotle’s first venture into Logical arguments and he identi-

2351 fied 16 valid forms, but others after him found additional ones. Most likely it
 2352 was the 13th century University of Paris scholar, William of Sherwood, who
 2353 gave names and hints to identifying the 19 valid syllogisms (out of 256) and
 2354 this particular one is called “BARBARA.”⁸

- 2355 • Syllogistic arguments consist of:
 - 2356 – two propositions which are premises, which in the above examples are
 - 2357 the first two sentences and
 - 2358 – a single proposition which is a conclusion.
- 2359 • A Syllogistic argument which is properly constructed according to one of the
- 2360 defined forms is simply *valid*, without regard to the terms (the A, B, or C).
- 2361 • A Syllogistic argument constructed according to one of the defined forms
- 2362 which has true premises is called *valid* and *sound*. That is: If the premises are
- 2363 true, and the argument is properly formed, then the conclusions must be true
- 2364 in a sound argument.
- 2365 • A Syllogistic argument which is not ordered according to one of the defined
- 2366 forms is *invalid* and *unsound*.

2367 **Introducing variables as a placeholder for the subjects and objects in a statement**
 2368 **is a seminal moment in the history of mathematics.**

2369 Amazing. Out of this beginning, your mobile phone was born.

2370 Now, about talking elephants and talking elephant-squirrels. Elephants can’t speak
 2371 English and squirrels aren’t elephants. So Example 2. is a *valid, but unsound argument*
 2372 according to the rules of Logic that Aristotle invented. Why? Well, remind yourself
 2373 of the “Euler Diagram” in Figure ???. Its conclusion is forced on you. Now consider
 2374 this argument:

2375 Example 4.

- 2376 • (All elephants)(are English speakers)
- 2377 • (All elephants)(are squirrels)
- 2378 • Therefore, (All squirrels) (are English speakers)

2379 This has the form:

2380 Example 5.

- 2381 • (All A)(are B)
- 2382 • (All A)(are C)
- 2383 • Therefore, (All C) (are B)

⁸BARBARA wasn’t a person, but a mnemonic invented by Sherwood in order to remember the kinds of statements are in the premises and conclusion. Here the three are “All” statements, and hence his name, “A” statements. So they are “All x are y.” E statements are of the form “No x is y” and for such a syllogism he invented the mnemonic, CELARENT, with two E’s and one A statement. He did this for each of the 19. Medieval analysis of Logic was exhaustive and probably exhausting. This dedication has carried on to this day.

2384 Notice that between Example 3. and Exam-
 2385 ple 5, that the order of A and C in the sec-
 2386 ond premise are switched which is enough
 2387 to make Example 4. invalid. So not only are
 2388 the premises not true (so not sound), but it's
 2389 also logically invalid and to get a sense of
 2390 that, look at Figure ???. The caption explains
 2391 why one is valid and the other not.

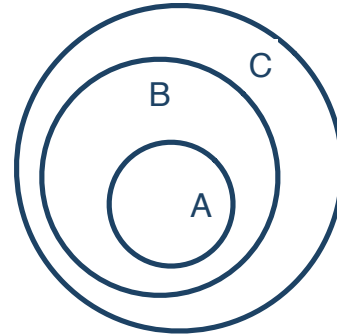


Figure 2.4: Here the invalid argument is clear. All of region A (elephants) are indeed included in region B (English speakers) but “all C (squirrels) are B (English speakers)” does not hold since there are regions in C (the squirrels region) that are *outside* of region B. Only some of region C are inside of region B.

2392 Aristotle covered this new-born subject in a
 2393 number of his books, including: *Categories*,
 2394 *On Interpretation*, *Prior Analytics*, *Posterior*
 2395 *Analytics*, *Topics*, and *On Sophistical Refuta-*
 2396 *tions* which collectively, were much later
 2397 dubbed “*Organon*” which means “instru-
 2398 ment.”

2399 What I’ve chosen for my elephant-squirrel
 2400 example is one of 256 possible syllogistic
 2401 forms. Maybe you can see why studying

2402 Logic became a matter of intense research following Aristotle’s death and into the
 2403 first 1000 years of both Arab and Western philosophy. There was lots of work to do.

2404 These arguments are examples of **deductive logic** which is often contrasted with
 2405 **inductive logic**. In Deduction, if the form of the argument is according to the rules,
 2406 then the argument is guaranteed to be valid. That’s the sort of argumentation that
 2407 was used in Socrates’ discussion with the slave boy in the sense that the conclusion
 2408 of a deductive argument is in some sense, already in the premises. Inductive logic
 2409 is not reliable since it’s not rule-bound and it delivers conclusions which can seem
 2410 persuasive but aren’t true.

2411 Here’s a personal, inductive argument about squirrels:

- 2412 • (As a child) There’s a brown squirrel
- 2413 • (As an adult... many times) There goes another brown squirrel
- 2414 • Wow... more brown squirrels and no other ones
- 2415 • What is it with all of the brown squirrels?
- 2416 • Gosh, I conclude that all squirrels are brown!

2417 Induction not only can sound persuasive, it sounds scientific. And it is an important
 2418 form of reasoning in science but it must be used with care. Aristotle knew of both
 2419 kinds of logic.

2420 Here's a problem with my induction about squirrels: Before I moved to Michigan,
 2421 the only squirrels I'd ever seen were brown. Now my yard is full of black squirrels.
 2422 They're everywhere. Many times in science a deduction uses premises which came
 2423 from inductive reasoning, so even if the deduction form its proper, the argument
 2424 might be unsound. Induction is always vulnerable to being questioned but the
 2425 soundness of properly formed deductive arguments can only be challenged by
 2426 questioning whether their premises are true. That's where a lot of the scientific
 2427 action is.

2428 From this point, when I refer to "logic" I'll mean deductive logic. By the way,
 2429 Sherlock Holmes is reputedly the Master of Deduction. Well, sorry. That's not true.
 2430 If you look at his stories you'll see very, very few examples of deductive reasoning.
 2431 He's the Master of Induction!⁹

2432 2.3.4.3 Propositional Logic

2433 **Theophrastus** (–371 to –287) was a favorite student of Aristotle's who led the
 2434 Lyceum for 37 years after his teacher's death. Aristotle even willed him the
 2435 guardianship of his children...and his library. While a devoted student, Theophras-
 2436 tus went beyond his teacher and expanded and modified some basic Aristotelian
 2437 notions. He also moved the study of botany forward and worked extensively in
 2438 Logic. Theodor Geisel (Dr. Seuss) used "Theophrastus" as a pen name.

2439 He is probably the one who extended the idea of syllogistic argumentation into a
 2440 new direction with the invention of "propositional logic" in which (for our examples
 2441 here) there are two variables, rather than the three of a syllogism.¹⁰ In the same
 2442 spirit as our definitions above, we'll call these *Propositional arguments*. This is where
 2443 the modern engineering action is.

2444 Propositional arguments are different in form, and content from Syllogistic ar-
 2445 guments. They involve a statement that is conditional: an "If thisthen that"
 2446 statement. Let's contrast them. Here's a Syllogistic argument:

- 2447
- (All apples)(are fruit)
 - (All red objects in that tree)
(are apples)
 - Therefore, (All red objects in
that tree) (are fruit)

Notice that the variables In Syllogisms
are kinds of things (called classes in
Logic).

2448 Here's a Propositional argument which seems similar, but is very different:

⁹Or more appropriately, the Master of Abduction, a, third kind of logic. Look it up.

¹⁰Propositional arguments can have any number of premises and variables.

2449

- (If those red objects are apples)
(then they are fruit.)
- (They are apples.)
- Therefore, (they are fruit.)

Here's how a Propositional argument is very different in an important way. The variables have a "truth-value," TRUE or FALSE.

2450

2451

2452

2453

2454

Just as before it's useful to abstract the specific terms in the premises with general symbols and Table ?? does this on the left in words, and on the right using logical symbols. The \rightarrow symbol means "implies" and is associated with an "If...then" kind of statement. The lone A is a standard way to say that "A is the case" or "A is true." Finally, the symbol \therefore means "therefore." It doesn't seem like much, but it's powerful. Establishing the truth-value of the conclusion of a Propositional argument

A Conditional in Words	A Conditional in Symbols
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If A is true, then B is true • A is true • Therefore, B is true. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • $A \rightarrow B$ • A • $\therefore B$

Table 2.1: A Conditional argument and its concise symbolic equivalent.

2455

2456

2457

2458

can be straightforward, or complicated. The game is to analyze the argument, again, for formal validity and ask whether the truth value of the premises guarantees to the truth of the conclusion.

2459

2460

An argument of this particular form (If A then B), (A), (therefore B) is called "Modus Ponens" (Latin for "method of affirming") and is one of six basic forms of propositional logical arguments. Another common propositional argument is "Modus Tollens," which also seems intuitive. For example: (If it is an apple) (then it is a fruit), (It is not an apple), (therefore it is not a fruit.)

2461

2.3.4.4 Logical Fallacies

2462

2463

Propositional logic lays bare some logical fallacies which can be mistakes. Or logical fallacies can be used to convince people of the truth of a conclusion using an argument that appears to be valid, but is not. Look at the argument on the left

A Valid Modem Monens Argument	A Logical Fallacy
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If a reactor leaks radiation, people nearby will get cancer. • A reactor leaked radiation • Therefore, people nearby got cancer. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If a reactor leaks radiation, people nearby will get cancer • People nearby got cancer • Therefore, the reactor leaked radiation.

Table 2.2: On the left, is a valid Modus Ponens argument. But on the right is a logical fallacy called Affirming the Consequent.

2464

2465 in Table ???. Its validity is forced on you in the way that deductive arguments must
 2466 do. A subtle change can take a valid argument and turn it into an invalid logical
 2467 fallacy called “Affirming the Consequent,” by switching the consequence for the
 2468 hypothesis in the second premise. Can you see that the argument on the right in
 2469 the table is sneaky, and invalid? People get cancer from all sorts of causes and that
 2470 someone got cancer does not mean that the reactor leaked radiation. Health care is
 often a target for this form of fallacy.

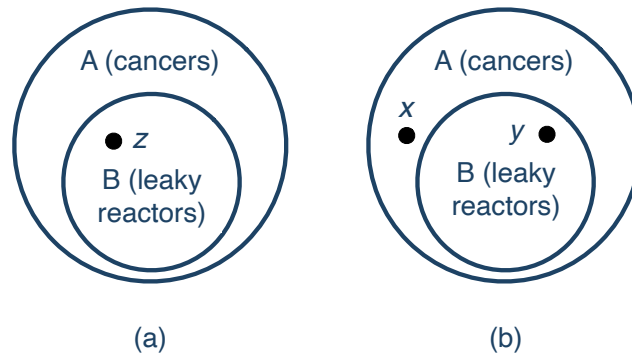


Figure 2.5: On the left is the valid argument that says that the placement of z with both a cancer and near a leaky reactor is the only result of the valid argument. But the right says that there is a cancer, but it could be either coincident with a leaky reactor (y) or have nothing to do with a reactor (x), and so the argument is invalid.

2471

2472 The objects in Figure ?? —which are not strictly Euler Diagrams— but similar to
 2473 them— help to capture the argument. The conclusion of the valid and invalid
 2474 arguments is apparent by the way the circles are arranged. The left diagram and the
 2475 right diagram are the same since they represent the “If...Then” part of the argument.
 2476 So within that arrangement, we can ask about validity by looking at entities that
 2477 might fit the discussion. Look at entity “ z ” in the left diagram. It has the property B
 2478 and since B is inside of A, it also has the property A. So given the argument, that
 2479 the reactor leaked and entity z is inside that leaked region, it also is inside of the
 2480 cancer region, completing the Modus Ponens true conclusion.

2481 The diagram on the right has the same two regions, but now in the spirit of the
 2482 invalid argument assert that entity y has the “attribute” of having cancer, so begin
 2483 inside of region A. But this doesn’t exhaust all of the possibilities for an entity
 2484 having cancer. Entity x is also asserted to have the property of having cancer, but
 2485 it doesn’t support the conclusion that it overlaps with the leaky reactor region. So
 2486 that second argument is not valid.

2487 2.3.4.5 The Connection with Our Modern World

2488 Aristotle's logical writing came from a deep level of analysis of language and
 2489 thought. From the ground up. One might think that some ideas are just too trivial
 2490 to write them down, but he wrote them down and defended his definitions even
 2491 the most trivial bits. Here's one:

2492 "...there cannot be an intermediate between contradictories, but of one subject we
 2493 must either affirm or deny any one predicate" Aristotle, *Metaphysics*

2494 This is called the Law of the Excluded Middle. *A proposition is either true or its*
 2495 *negation is true.* There's no in-between. It's binary. This is a "two-valued" logic and
 2496 Aristotle's structure was always built around that requirement: he didn't admit the
 2497 (modern) idea of "degrees of truth" or "fuzzy logic." Trivial? Centuries of ink have
 2498 been spilled over precisely understanding the implications of Law of the Excluded
 2499 Middle and how to unequivocally state it symbolically. It's a simple idea that's deep
 2500 and he had a number of such crisply defined notions so his Logic was really built
 2501 from first principles.

2502 What else can you think of that's strictly two-valued? How about binary arithmetic,
 2503 where the only numbers are 0 and 1. How might you trivially represent 0 and 1?
 2504 How about a pair of fixed voltages, say $V = 0$ and $V = 5$ volts.¹¹ There are a handful
 2505 of seminal discoveries about Logic that extend to our modern usage. **Gottfried**
 2506 **Wilhelm Leibniz** (1646–1716) refined binary arithmetic. In 1854, **George Boole**
 2507 (1815–1864) invented the algebra of two-valued logic...how to combine multiple
 2508 conjunctives into meaningful outcomes which can only be T or F, 1 or 0. In 1921 in
 2509 his dense and terse *Tractatus Logico-Philosophicus*, **Ludwig Wittgenstein** (1889–1951)
 2510 presented the Truth Table, which can be used in logical proofs (and circuit design).
 2511 Finally, in 1938 **Claude Shannon** (1916–2001) realized that Boole's algebra could be
 2512 realized in electronic, "on-off" circuits. This was put into practice in the 1940's with
 2513 vacuum tubes and then in the 1960's with transistors.

2514 2.3.4.6 Truth Tables

2515 My goal here is to give you a hint about how important logical analysis has become,
 2516 from following two of Aristotle's ideas: First, that statements and propositions can
 2517 be written as abstract sentences with *variables* rather than with named things. And,
 2518 that The Law of the Excluded Middle leads us to a *two-valued logic*.

2519 Here's a statement: (It is raining.) This could be true (T) or false (F) depending on
 2520 circumstances. But it's verifiable since we could determine T or F by looking out
 2521 the window. We'll call that statement p . Here's another: (the grass is wet.), another
 2522 verifiable statement which could be T or F and we'll call it q .

¹¹the voltage range for transistor-transistor logic (TTL) logic used in many applications.

2523 We can put these together into a compound statement using a “logical connective”:
 2524 (It is raining.) AND (The grass is wet). “AND” joins the two statements. We can
 2525 write this using the logical symbol, \wedge , which stands for AND, so our sentence—in
 2526 general— can be abstracted in the Aristotle-variable-way as $p \wedge q$.

2527 Our question of interest is: when will the compound statement, (It is raining.) AND
 2528 (the grass is wet) be true? That is, what is the truth-value of “ $p \wedge q$ ”...for the four
 2529 possible T and F values that p and q might take on? Thought of a different way, if I
 2530 asserted that compound statement, when am I telling the truth?

- 2531 • If it is raining and the grass is wet, then $p = T$ and $q = T$ and I would be
 2532 telling the truth if I said, “It is raining and the grass is wet.”
- 2533 • If it is raining and the grass is not wet. $p = T$ and $q = F$ then I would be lying
 2534 if I said, “It is raining and the grass is wet.” (since $q = F$ means that the grass
 2535 is dry).
- 2536 • If It is not raining and the grass is wet. $p = F$ and $q = T$ then I would be lying
 2537 if I said, “It is raining and the grass is wet.”
- 2538 • If it is not raining and the grass is not wet. $p = F$ and $q = F$ then I would be
 2539 lying if I said, “It is raining and the grass is wet.”

2540 So of the four possible combinations of p and q , there is only one instance where
 2541 the combination $p \wedge q$ is TRUE. This begs for an ordered way to present these
 2542 possibilities and for each p and q , we can generate rows in a **Truth Table**. For AND,
 2543 this is shown in Table ?? . Notice that the entries in the last column correspond to
 the bullets just above and complete the possible p 's and q 's states.

Raining?	Wet?	$p \wedge q$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	F
F	F	F

Table 2.3: The Truth Table for the AND connective.

2544

2545 Primitive logical connectives come by different names depending on one’s discipline.
 2546 They include: NOT, AND, OR, XOR (“exclusive OR”), NAND (“not-AND”), NOR
 2547 (negate), XNOR (“exclusive NOR”), Implication, and Biconditional. They all have
 2548 their own truth tables. And they’re useful. What this means is that we can take
 2549 many arguments and turn them into symbols using the connectives as “puzzle
 2550 pieces.”

2551 Let’s think about analyzing an everyday situation, like planning a picnic. Weather
 2552 can be a problem for picnicking since wet grass can make the it unpleasant. So the

2553 morning of the planned outing, a picnic planner might muse something like:

- 2554 • If it is raining, then the grass is wet
- 2555 • It is raining
- 2556 • And so the grass is wet.

2557 Notice that this has the form of Modus Ponens and we're going to make a 21st
 2558 century realization of it 2000 years after it was discovered. Here, $p =$ (It is raining.)
 2559 and $q =$ (The grass is wet.). Let's set the stage and flesh out the single possibility for
 2560 a valid Modus Ponens argument.

- 2561 • (If it is TRUE that it is raining, then it will be TRUE that the grass is wet)
- 2562 • AND (it is TRUE that it is raining)
- 2563 • THEN (it is TRUE that the grass is wet)

2564 But a Propositional argument contains phrases that have truth values, and in general,
 2565 they are not necessarily all true. Recall the "am I lying" test from above: we could
 2566 have $p = T$ or F and $p = T$ or F and only one combination of the four possible
 2567 arrangements completes our valid raining-wet argument.

2568 The entire set of possibilities can be compactly and completely captured in one big
 2569 truth table and here I just present this result in Table ?? . It's a picnic table (sorry). (In
 2570 Appendix ?? I build that whole table.) Notice that the AND operation between the
 2571 third and first columns creates the third column's results, by comparing them using
 2572 the rows of Table ?? as an instruction. The only combination that's true is the first
 one, the Modus Ponens argument itself. Validity of the argument is assured only if

Variables		Conditional	Conclusion
p	q	$(p \rightarrow q)$	$(p \rightarrow q) \text{ AND } p$
T	T	T	T
T	F	F	F
F	T	T	F
F	F	T	F

Table 2.4: The truth table for the Propositional argument above. The last column comes from comparing the third column with first column according the the T and F values in Table ?? .

2573
 2574 $p = T$ and $q = T$. Our connective, AND, figures prominently in this Propositional
 2575 argument.

2576 2.3.4.7 Modern Digital Arguments

2577 Inspired by Aristotle, this "regular" conversation about the consequence of raining
 2578 and the state of the grass can actually be embedded into a digital circuit using

2579 very basic digital packages¹² called “gates” (NOT, AND, OR, XOR, NAND, NOR,
 2580 XNOR, and buffers). You’ll recognize them as some of the logical connectives from
 2581 above, plus one more that has a single input and just holds its value, called a buffer.
 2582 The magic of the second half of the twentieth century is that particular combinations
 2583 of transistors can produce digital packages corresponding to the gates which in turn
 2584 can be soldered to a circuit board to make a decision-making circuit. With all of the
 2585 individual gates, an electrical engineer can piece them together to do a job. In the
 2586 background, if not in the engineer’s notebook, is the equivalent of a complicated
 2587 truth table.

Think about the decision-making that’s required in order for an ATM machine to pro-
 cess your card, the keypad, your PIN, your request, and that you took out your bills.
 2588 That each step was accomplished—and checked to have been done correctly—is
 actually a set of questions with T or F answers that a digital circuit is happy to perform
 2589 for you.

2590 Figure ?? is a cartoon of what this might
 2591 mean. In the top figure, I show the engineer-
 2592 ing symbol for an AND gate. Below it, the
 2593 black box could consist of a single digital
 2594 gate element, or hundreds of digital gates,
 2595 each receiving inputs from the outputs of
 2596 other others. Here the box receives two bi-
 2597 nary inputs, each of which could be T or
 2598 F.¹³ and it outputs a result, r , either T or F.
 2599 So there could be four possible inputs but
 2600 one result. What’s inside of the box are cir-
 2601 cuits of connected gates built on the logical
 2602 structure of the problem.

2603 Our complete Modus Ponens picnic argu-
 2604 ment presented here as set of English state-
 2605 ments could be recreated in a digital cir-
 2606 cuit (what might be inside the black box
 2607 in Figure ?? (b)). For our particular exam-
 2608 ple the circuit would consist of three gates
 2609 (made from five transistors which would
 2610 be so small that you cannot see them): an

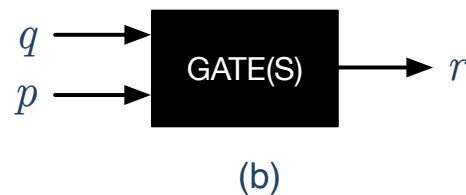
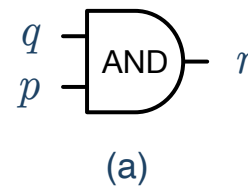


Figure 2.6: In (a) the engineering symbol for an AND gate is shown. The output of the AND gate, r , corresponds to the result of the truth table in Table ?? . In (b) a black box of digital logic gates is suggested. The two inputs, p and q , are each either T or F and the output, r , is either T or F. This could be one gate or a thousand gates.

¹²You can go on Amazon and purchase integrated circuit packages of usually multiple gates in a single element that can be soldered onto a circuit board.

¹³which in practice, of course, is a 1 or 0 (“low” or “high”) bit, and at the transistor level, a low and high voltage in a circuit

2611 electronic circuit of the English sentences
2612 covering all of the possibilities of the argument.

2613 I hope you can get a sense of how digital circuits are designed. There's a job to do,
2614 it's described in logical terms (p 's and q 's), a truth table (or equivalent) abstraction
2615 is done, and from (millions of) combinations of the seven digital gates that exist,
2616 a circuit design is created. Humans used to do this, indeed at the beginning of
2617 my career we laid out digital circuits by hand, but now computer aided design
2618 workstations do the work of creating schematics, simulating what electrical signals
2619 would do in the design, and preparing the instructions for printed circuit board
2620 (PCB) fabrication by specialized companies.

2621 The first digital computers relied on thousands of vacuum tubes and filled whole
2622 rooms with hot, clunky racks of tubes and wires but when the transistor became
2623 commercially viable in the 1960s the digital world came alive. With binary arith-
2624 metic, gates can be combined to do arithmetic functions, logical functions, and
2625 importantly, storage of bits. A 1 bit digital memory consists of four so-called NAND
2626 gates—four transistors—and it's the basic cell of a computer's memory.

2627 All of these—and more—transistor components can be imprinted in tiny sili-
2628 con wafers in which a single transistor package might be only 20 nanometers
2629 in size or soldered to a circuit board as a package about half of size of a AA bat-
2630 tery. With the logical functions and the manufacturing techniques of today, my
2631 current Apple Watch has 32GB of random access memory (RAM) and so it can
2632 manage 32,000,000,000 Bytes of information, which is 25,6000,000,000 bits and so
2633 102,400,000,000 individual transistors are inside my watch, just for the memory! The
2634 CPU and control circuitry would add millions of additional imprinted transistors
2635 and their gate-equivalents. All on my wrist. All speaking "Aristotle."

2636 Obviously, the 2500 year path from Classical Athens to cat videos on YouTube is
2637 full of breakthroughs and smart ideas. But it all started with Aristotle.

2638 Chapter 3

2639 The Most Important Mathematician 2640 You've Never Heard Of : 2641 Eudoxus and Greek Astronomy

2642 "We shall try to note down everything which we think we have discovered up to
2643 the present time; we shall do this as concisely as possible and in a manner which
2644 can be followed by those who have already made some progress in the field. For
2645 the sake of completeness in our treatment we shall set out everything useful for
2646 the theory of the heavens in the proper order, but to avoid undue length we shall
2647 merely recount what has been adequately established by the ancients. However,
2648 those topics which have not been dealt with [by our predecessors] at all, or not as
2649 usefully as they might have been, will be discussed at length, to the best of our
2650 ability."

2651 - Ptolemy, *Almagest*, Book I, 1

2652

2653 The passage above is the opening stanza of the last verse of Greek
2654 astronomy and is at the threshold of a strange 1500 year dance between
2655 the rigorously mathematical (Ptolemy) and achingly abstract (Aristotle)
2656 models of the universe. How we got there is the purpose of this chapter
2657 as it lays the ground work for two millennia of mutually supportive and
2658 mutually conflicting views of MOTION BY THE EARTH, MOTION ON THE
2659 EARTH, and MOTION IN THE HEAVENS .

2660

2661 I'll bet that many of you have seen the solar system arrange-

2662 ment as imagined by Copernicus (surprises await in Chapter ??) with
 2663 the Sun in the center and all of the planets, including Earth, obediently
 2664 orbiting it in perfect circles. What he challenged was the ancient, and
 2665 universally-held idea, that it's the stationary Earth that's in the center
 2666 of the universe, not the Sun. Fascination with that picture is prevalent
 2667 in many decorated medieval manuscripts through the centuries and
 2668 one of the earliest is shown in Figure ?. This is from a 10th century
 2669 edition from the British Museum of a poem by the Greek poet, **Aratus**
 2670 from about –275 called *Phaenomena* which was named for a book of
 2671 the stars and constellations by the Greek mathematician, Eudoxus,
 2672 of probably a century before. It was he who created that 2000 year
 2673 old “geocentric” model of the universe—one in which the Sun, Moon,
 2674 planets, and stars all orbit around the stationary Earth. We will see that
 2675 the poem *Phaenomena* figures crucially in the history of astronomy two
 2676 centuries after Aratus wrote it, so watch for it reappearing as we proceed.
 2677

I took some pains in the last chapter to underscore that mod-



Figure 3.1: Aratus the poet lived about a century after Eudoxus (and hence, Aristotle) and turned his astronomy book into a poem. Later, Cicero translated it and this 10th century manuscript is an illustrated copy of that work.

<https://sarahjbiggs.typepad.com/.a/6a013488b5399e970c01bb07c8696d970d-pi>

2678

2679

els of MOTION ON THE EARTH belong in Aristotle’s corner as he really

2680 invented the dynamics of motion. But while we tend to ascribe that
 2681 geocentric model of the universe to him as well, he borrowed it lock
 2682 stock and barrel from Eudoxus and Plato.

2683
 2684 This “geocentric” picture became the authoritative, unquestioned
 2685 dogma of the medieval and renaissance periods even though it made
 2686 no numerical predictions and was known since Aristotle’s time to be
 2687 just wrong. The other game in town was precise and predictive and was
 2688 the model of the Greek astronomer, Claudius Ptolemy, from the first
 2689 century, CE.

2690
 2691 The Greek world—indeed, the whole world—was radically and
 2692 violently altered by Alexander the Great and between Aristotle and
 2693 Cleopatra, astronomy become an experimental and quantitative science.
 2694 The culmination of Greek astronomy came after Greek—everything
 2695 became Roman—everything and just before the Roman Empire began
 2696 its decline. One last Greek, in our long string of Greek philosophers,
 2697 mathematicians, and scientists remained and we’ll close our chapter
 2698 with Ptolemy’s “turn-the-crank“ model for MOTION IN THE HEAVENS.

2699

2700 A game that many scientists play is to trace their scientific lineage back for centuries—
 2701 their major professor’s professor and so on (there’s an app for that). I followed
 2702 mine back through centuries and found that I descended from Copernicus!¹ I’d like
 2703 to think I’ve made him proud.

2704 Sometimes it turns out that someone’s student ends up in the history books. But
 2705 not many students actually take over the known world by force!

2706 When Plato died, the Macedonian King Philip II “encouraged” Aristotle to relocate
 2707 to Macedonia in order to teach his 13 year old son, Alexander. He set up a school,
 2708 taught Alexander (and perhaps the future general/king, Ptolemy) for three years,
 2709 and then stayed for seven more before returning to Athens where he started his
 2710 school, the Lyceum. By this time the teen-aged Alexander was already on the
 2711 battlefield and with his father, had occupied the entirety of the Peloponnese. So
 2712 Athens was once again ruled by outsiders—now connected to Aristotle!

2713 After Philip II was assassinated,² and Alexander, soon to be “The Great,” ascended
 2714 to the throne and began his brutal lightning-fast, nine year conquest of the entire
 2715 western world: modern Turkey, the middle east, Egypt, Arabia, and all the way

¹Everyone I know seems to come from Copernicus. A mark that what he started had legs?

²Assassination, murder, and betrayal were a family hobby.

2716 across Afghanistan to India, leaving military oversight over Athens and the rest
 2717 of Greece. While he stayed in touch with Aristotle, sending him samples from all
 2718 over Asia, his teacher became distant, put off by Alexander's adaptation of Persian
 2719 customs, dress, and persona.

2720 Alexander died in Babylon in –323 under suspicious circumstances and, within a
 2721 year, Aristotle himself died at the age of 63 at his mother's family estate outside
 2722 of Athens. His Macedonian connections had become dangerous and his adopted
 2723 city turned on him: impiety was charged, a death sentence issued, and so he fled to
 2724 his mother's home uttering his famous remark about the city not sinning against
 2725 philosophy for a second time. In his absence, the Lyceum stayed active under new
 2726 management for another century.

2727 Alexander's senior commanders divided up the sprawling kingdom among a
 2728 dozen generals and aides and they did what came naturally: they fought among
 2729 themselves for 40 years. In the end, three kingdoms and a dizzying array of
 2730 city-states were established: the survivors were Macedonia and Greece, Seleucia
 2731 (roughly modern-day Iraq), and Egypt.

2732 Hundreds of thousands of Greeks migrated into the newly acquired territories
 2733 establishing an international Greek-ness of culture, arts, and philosophy which was
 2734 the beginning of the **Hellenistic Age**.³ The entire western world became "Greek."
 2735 Of the two dozen cities that Alexander created or conquered named for himself, the
 2736 "Alexandria" that mattered most to him, and to us, was the new Egyptian port city
 2737 of Alexandria.

2738 Egypt became unusually secure under Alexander's former body guard and general
 2739 (and rumored Aristotle student), **Ptolemy I Soter** (–367 to –282) who eventually
 2740 fashioned himself, "Pharaoh." He adopted Egyptian customs,⁴ and was an intellec-
 2741 tual of sorts, creating the first state-supported national laboratory and library. The
 2742 "Alexandrian Museum" was a national facility devoted to research and among its
 2743 first recruits was the mathematician, Euclid, who while in residence, wrote *Elements*,
 2744 the most-read book in history, besides the Bible. For 2500 years, from Copernicus to
 2745 Thomas Jefferson, mastering *Elements* was the route to mathematical literacy.⁵ For
 2746 centuries the Museum was home to scores of Greek scholars, all supported by the
 2747 dozen Ptolemy's from the 1st to the final one, Cleopatra.

2748 The Library of Alexandria probably contained all of the manuscripts of the classical
 2749 and Hellenic philosophers, poets, playwrights, and physicians. There was a hunger
 2750 for knowledge of all sorts and agents of Ptolemy's library director searched every

³Often the pre-Alexandrian Greek era is called "Hellenic."

⁴including that of rulers marrying their siblings

⁵Ptolemy found it rough-going and asked for an easier way to learn it, but was told by the author that "...there is no Royal Road to geometry," a sentiment still applicable today.

2751 ship that docked, stealing or copying any books on board and renting or stealing
2752 manuscripts from all of the major cities.

2753 Among the scores of Alexandrian scientists are the astronomers Eratosthenes of
2754 Cyrene, Aristarchus of Samos, and especially Claudius Ptolemaeus who will fig-
2755 ure into our story, while only Heraclides of Athens, Hipparchus of Nicaea, and
2756 Apollonius of Perga played major roles outside of Alexandria. The Greek Ptolemy
2757 dynasty lasted 300 years until the legendary feud involving “the” Cleopatra (a
2758 common name for female Ptolemy-family successors), Marc Antony, and Julius
2759 Caesar. The Library and Museum lasted into the first five centuries CE until the
2760 Muslim conquests of the near east, north Africa, and Spain when it was eclipsed by
2761 great Muslim libraries in Baghdad, Cairo, and Cordoba in Spain.

2762 3.1 A Little Bit of Eudoxus

2763 Recall that Philolaus was the source of Plato and Aristotle’s knowledge of
2764 Pythagoreanism—for example, the “Pythagorean” cosmology came through him or
2765 probably originated from him. Was he a student of Pythagoras? Their overlaps are
2766 nearly right in order to imagine that relationship, but that’s controversial. He’s
2767 certainly the closest we get to the great man so it’s not far-fetched to continue
2768 the teacher → student theme that began this chapter: Pythagoras → Philolaus →
2769 Archytas → Eudoxus. Lunar craters are named after each which is not the normal
2770 teacher-student legacy. (Set the context with the timeline in Figure ?? on page ??.)

2771 **Eudoxus of Cnidus** (circa –408 to around –355) was the son of a physician and
2772 became one himself, but we know of him as a gifted mathematician and astronomer.
2773 As we’ll see, astronomy and medicine were connected through astrology and
2774 mathematics and astronomy have always been kin, so these seemingly disparate
2775 skills go together. Cnidus was a city founded by Sparta on the southern Aegean
2776 coast of modern Turkey and was where he started... and finished, between which
2777 times he traveled all over the Aegean to study and teach. As a young man he went to
2778 Tarentum to study mathematics with the pre-eminent Pythagorean mathematician
2779 (and much more) **Archytas of Tarentum** (–428 to –347) who seemed like a sensible
2780 guy:

2781 To become knowledgeable about things one does not know, one must either learn
2782 from others or find out for oneself. Now learning derives from someone else and
2783 is foreign, whereas finding out is of and by oneself. Finding out without seeking is
2784 difficult and rare, but with seeking it is manageable and easy, though someone who
2785 does not know how to seek cannot find. Archytas, *fragment*.

2786 Let’s learn a little bit about him in Figure Box ?? on page ?. After you’ve read about
2787 Archytas, return to this point ↩ and continue reading about his student, Eudoxus.

2788

FIGURE BOX ??



The image on the left is a famous engraving (by an unknown artist...maybe late 18th century) suggesting an ancient sentiment due to Archytas, a friend and competitor of Plato. Among the most famous arguments in cosmology is whether the universe is infinite or finite in size and Archytas had the first of many similar inspirations that the universe cannot be finite: He did a thought experiment, imagining traveling to its presumed edge and attempting to thrust his stick beyond that limit. If he could extend it, then, well, that's not the edge...and so he'd have

to go further, repeating the experiment without end. This is a good example of the kind of intuitive cleverness that seemed to be built into this great Greek mathematician, politician, and military leader. The very model of a modern major—Pythagorean— general. Archytas was a committed Pythagorean and a mathematician of great skill. But he also he was a civic leader and an elected military general, in spite of Tarentum law, re-elected seven times because he never lost a battle. (Did I mention that Greeks fought constantly?) When he did step down, the army started losing.

Archytas was reported to be an even-tempered, cultured man who led Tarentum through a period of democracy and that Aristotle apparently wrote more (lost) books about Archytas than he wrote about any other person. There is some evidence that he wrote a book on mechanics and that he enjoyed making mechanical toys for children—very un-Plato-like in spirit.

His mathematical skills were legendary and he solved an old problem with mystical roots: Apollo sent a plague to the city of Delos and a delegation was sent to Delphi to learn from the Oracle how to rid themselves of the pestilence. The instructions were to take their cubical altar to Apollo...and build a new one with double its volume. This is called the problem of “duplicating the cube“ (also called the Delian Problem) and it required cleverness on Archytas' part, beyond just geometry, which caused Plato to disparage his effort. Archytas contributed to many branches of mathematics and Euclid's *Elements* includes some of his proofs.

All in all, Archytas was the most accomplished Pythagorean of all and in the spirit of the opening to this chapter, we're indebted to him for his products, but also one of his students. The most accomplished of all Greek mathematicians before Archimedes, Eudoxus, from whom 2000 years of cosmology originated.

Now go back to page ?? and pick up where you left off.

2789 He seemed to not be able to stay in one place. After his mathematics instruction,
 2790 he went to Sicily to study medicine, then by the age of 23 he went to Athens and
 2791 stayed briefly (and apparently, unhappily) with Plato's Academy (rooming 7 miles
 2792 away, so a long commute to lectures). After less than a year, he was back on the
 2793 road to home in order to raise funds...so that he could travel even further! He went
 2794 to Egypt with what we'd call a scholarship and studied astronomy there for 16
 2795 months, shaving his head and learning from the priestly-cast astronomers, before
 2796 leaving for the northern modern Turkish Black Sea coast and the Greek colony of
 2797 Cyzicus. By this point he's lecturing on his own and established a popular school
 2798 and an observatory. With data from his observing in the north and from Egypt, he
 2799 published his first book, *Phaenomena*, which was a compendium of star locations
 2800 and *On Speeds*, of their motions. Recall that this is the subject of Aratus' important
 2801 poem.

2802 Around –368, during his 30s, he moved his school to Athens, by which time Plato
 2803 was 60 years old and Aristotle had left for Macedonia. It was here, as the legend
 2804 goes, that Eudoxus was challenged by Plato to form a geometrical model of the
 2805 heavens. The legend is unlikely as by this point, Eudoxus was the mathematical
 2806 champion of the Greek-speaking world and more likely to issue challenges, than
 2807 accept them. Plato's mathematical skill was no match for Eudoxus' whose work
 2808 was memorialized in a number of Euclid's *Elements*. As we'll see below his model
 2809 was born and in various guises, persisted until Galileo, Kepler, and Newton.

2810 He first calculated/measured the length of a year of 365 days and 6 hours. and it's
 2811 Eudoxus' astronomy and cosmology that are our concern here and so let's work up
 2812 to that with a review of the problems that everyone in antiquity faced when trying
 2813 to describe what we observe from Earth and then work through Plato's ideas that
 2814 formed an almost linear line of inspiration: from Pythagoreans, to Plato, and to
 2815 Eudoxus.

2816 3.2 A Little Bit of the Sky

2817 The biggest export of Greek astronomy before the Romans was Aristotle's model
 2818 of the cosmos with its Earth-centered ("geocentric") description of MOTION BY
 2819 THE EARTH and MOTION IN THE HEAVENS . It became popularized, petrified, and
 2820 deified when it was officially incorporated into Church dogma after the work of
 2821 Thomas Aquinas in the late 13th century. So from that point until the Baroque era,
 2822 Aristotle reigned supreme. He was revolutionary and inventive in so many areas,
 2823 so it's amusing that his cosmological model had the longest run and that it was
 2824 almost entirely due to Eudoxus. We'll dig a little deeper into their ideas as both
 2825 were influential. But Aristotle had predecessors.

2826 The stars seem innumerable and for millennia people have found recognizable
 2827 images of animals and deities in the stellar patterns, the constellations; particular
 2828 bright stars were given names; and that region in the sky at night that corresponds
 2829 to the path of the Sun had special constellations called the zodiac. Babylonians
 2830 and Egyptians in particular took notes on when stars or parts of constellations rose,
 2831 and when that event occurred, what stars were directly overhead, and what stars
 2832 were disappearing in the west. Patiently, each night for hundreds of years these
 2833 observations were recorded, to become useful during the Hellenistic period.

2834 3.2.1 What Ancients Saw and What We Still See

2835 There are very few objective experiences that we can share with people who lived
 2836 thousands of years ago. But if you watch the Sun's path across your sky during a
 2837 day and across months you'll see exactly what individuals saw over many millennia.
 2838 Further, if you look at the night sky over a single and many nights you'll experience
 2839 exactly the same things as all of prior humanity. We can disagree about a lot, but
 2840 every human has experienced the same MOTION IN THE HEAVENS. You might even
 2841 generate some of the same "why" questions as they did and the Greeks were always
 2842 full of "why" questions.

2843 Now suppose you're indeed a smart Greek with time on your hands and able to
 2844 spend years just recording what the sky presents to you during the days and nights.
 2845 A few things would stand out...and if you were a patient and persistent observer
 2846 nuance would start to emerge. In *Greek Astronomy, Today* in Section ?? I'll "set the
 2847 record straight" with modern explanations for each of these scenes and motions but
 2848 here we'll just observe. Let's go out tonight.

2849 **The celestial sphere.** Let's look up after sunset and watch the stars' motions
 2850 through a night. Figure ?? is what we'd see. Here we have an observer look-
 2851 ing south with the eastern horizon on their left and the western horizon on their
 2852 right. Directly overhead is the **zenith** which would be 90° from all points on the
 2853 horizon. Let's follow one particular, familiar constellation.

2854 Virgo, the "maiden" is the largest constellation in the zodiac and is most evident in
 2855 the spring. Its shape presents two "legs" and two "arms" seemingly attached to a
 2856 "body." The downward "hip" is Spica, one of the brightest stars in the sky. The two
 2857 outstretched arms reach to the spectacular Virgo Cluster of thousands of elliptical
 2858 and spiral galaxies. Our interest is more modest.

2859 The naked-eye star, Heze, is joined at the other hip to Virgo, so to speak, and is
 2860 actually two relatively modest stars appearing to us to be close together. What's
 2861 useful for us is Heze's location because it traces out an important circular path.
 2862 Figure ?? shows it as a dotted circle on March 19, 2024 from East Lansing, Michigan

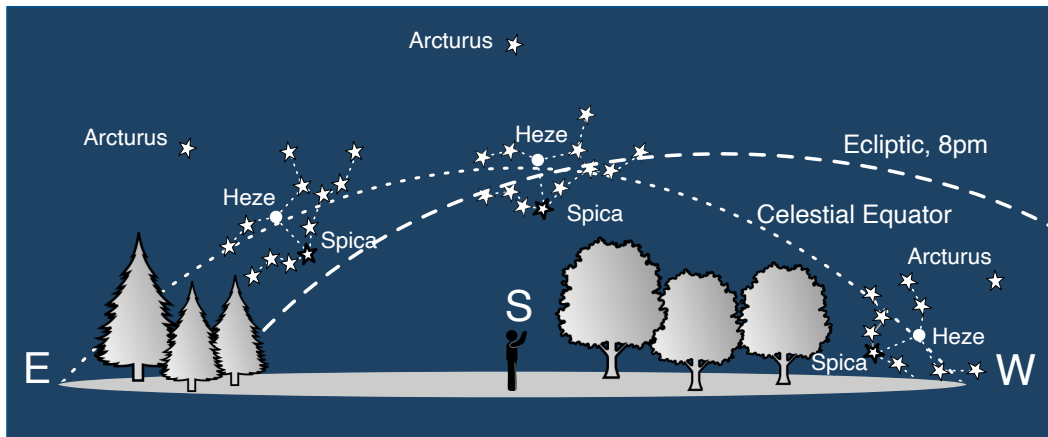


Figure 3.3: CAPTION

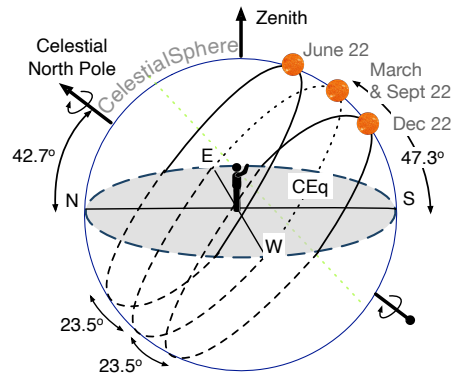
2863 with three replicas of Virgo showing its positions from late in afternoon (invisible
 2864 since the Sun is still up), to overhead about 9 PM, and then at about 2 AM when
 2865 it sets. That dotted curve to which Heze appears to be attached is special, it starts
 2866 directly in the east and ends directly in the west. Also pictured is Arcturus, the
 2867 fourth brightest star in the sky which likewise follows another circular path which
 2868 is parallel to Heze's. In fact, as you watch, you can imagine all of the stars in the sky
 2869 following concentric, circular paths every night. Figure ?? (a) shows a time-lapse
 2870 photograph of the northern sky where all of the circular star-trails are evident with
 2871 the axis of all of those circles centered on the North Star, Polaris.

2872 The most natural impression is that you're standing in the middle of an enormous
 2873 24 hour spinning sphere — the **Celestial Sphere**—with stars attached to its inside
 2874 surface. If the Earth were to become transparent, you'd see the whole stellar
 2875 panorama turning around you and its axis from Polaris to the other side below you
 2876 in the southern hemisphere. Heze's path is special since that dotted line traces out
 2877 the equator of that spinning sphere, the **Celestial Equator, CEq** as it's labeled in
 2878 Figure ??.

2879 This picture is an old one identified with Aristotle, as we'll see. It's also a quan-
 2880 tifiable picture. By his time, everyone knew that the Earth was spherical and that
 2881 the some of the angular quantities in the sky matched angular quantities on the
 2882 Earth's surface. For example, in Figure ?? the angle that the Celestial Pole makes
 2883 with the northern horizon is identical to the observer's latitude. Greeks were
 2884 spread between northern Africa (about 30° north of the equator) and the northern
 2885 shores of the Black Sea (about 45° north), so the apparent position of the celestial
 2886 pole was easily seen to be different when viewed from different locations. That
 2887 means that the angle that the celestial equator makes with the southern horizon is
 2888 $(90^\circ - \text{the observer's latitude})$. Figure ?? is again drawn for East Lansing, Michi-



(a)



(b)

Figure 3.4: (a) A time-lapse photograph of the star images during a single night in the northern hemisphere are shown clearly demonstrating the circular “inside” of the Celestial Sphere. The pole is conveniently located (now) at the North Star, Polaris. (b) A perspective view a view of the Celestial Sphere from one’s horizon, here for the latitude of 42.74° of East Lansing, Michigan, is shown. The three bands show the Sun’s path in the sky at the Summer Solstice (top), Winter Solstice (bottom), and the Equinox (middle). Each of the bands around that central arc are 23.5° above and below it.

2889 gan. Here you can see three angles, all of which the Greeks determined. The latitude of
 2890 of 41.7° for East Lansing is shown as the altitude of the North Pole (celestial and
 2891 Earth poles); The altitude of the Celestial Equator is $09^\circ - 41.7^\circ = 47.3^\circ$, which is
 2892 also the altitude of the Sun at an equinox; and finally, the angular separation of the
 2893 Sun’s extreme altitudes is 23.5° up and down from the equinox Sun’s path.

2894 Of particular importance were the constellations in which the “Sun resides” during
 2895 the time of an equinox.⁶ During the times of the Greeks, that point in the sky was in
 2896 the leading edge of the zodiacal constellation of Aries—the “First Point of Aries”
 2897 became the origin of a coordinate system in order to document the location of
 2898 stars and planets and became particularly important in the -200 ’s by important
 2899 astronomers.

2900 **Planets’ apparent motions.** There are a few brighter objects which execute similar
 2901 east-west motions through an individual night, are very bright, don’t twinkle like
 2902 stars, and occupy strange, un-star-like positions from night to night. Of course, these
 2903 are the “planets,” probably named by the Greeks from their word for “wanderer,”
 2904 *planetai*, Figure ?? shows the sky at 6 AM from East Lansing, Michigan in which

⁶Of course, they could not see the stars when the Sun is out, but they knew to look at the sky exactly 12 hours later and then extrapolate 180° around the zodiac to determined where that point of “residence” is.

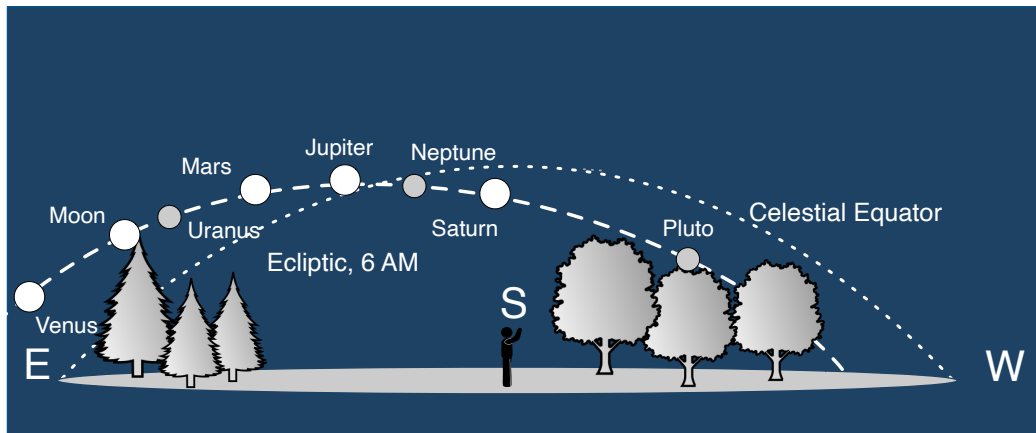


Figure 3.5: The position of the planets from East Lansing, Michigan at 6 AM. The dotted line is the Celestial Equator and the dashed line is the ecliptic. The gray circles indicate where planets that the Greeks could not have seen with the naked eye.

2905 many planets are above the horizon at once. The bright circles are naked eye planets
 2906 and the gray circles are the rest of the complement, with Pluto added for nostalgia.
 2907 The Sun is on that same dashed curve and is just below the eastern horizon (led by
 2908 Venus). All of the planets are within $\pm 7^\circ$ of the dashed mean curve (except Pluto
 2909 which is 17° , one of the reasons it's no longer considered a planet of ours). This
 2910 common "lane" in which all of the solar system (and the Moon) objects reside is
 2911 called the **ecliptic** and the central path is sometimes called the "mean Sun." At a
 2912 different day and time, the Celestial Equator hasn't moved, but the ecliptic traces
 2913 out a different curve relative to the horizon and you can see that in Figure ??, where
 2914 it's represented again as a dashed curve. This must have been confusing!

2915 The ecliptic is inclined to the Celestial Equator by 23.5° . The constellations of the
 2916 zodiac are distributed around the sphere within that strip of the sky⁷ and the center
 2917 of it is the path of the Sun.

2918 Finally, there are two kinds of "motions" spoken of for the planets, which is confus-
 2919 ing.

- 2920 • If you watch a planet during a single night, you'll see it move from east to
 2921 west in line with the stars behind it. This is called "**prograde motion**."
- 2922 • But there's another kind of "motion" which is not during a single night, but
 2923 appears as a comparison from night to night. Suppose you look at Mars every
 2924 night at 10 PM and take note of what stars are behind and around it. About
 2925 every 26 months you'll see something strange happen. Suppose Star A and
 2926 Star B are on either side of Mars. In some successive nights the arrangement
 2927 of the three objects will go something like this cartoon facing the south (Mars'

⁷There are 13 zodiac signs, but that's inconvenient for astrologers so they ignore one of them.

2928 back and forth would actually take about four months):

Night #1 EastA.....M.....B West
 Night #2 EastA.....M.....B West
 Night #3 EastA.....M.....B West
 Night #4 EastA....M.....B West
 Night #5 EastA.....M.....B West
 Night #6 EastA.....M.....B West
 2929 Night #7 EastA.....M....B West
 Night #8 EastA.....M.....B West
 Night #9 EastA.....M.....B West
 Night #10 EastA.....M.....B West
 Night #11 EastA.....M.....B West
 Night #12 EastA.....M.....B West
 Night #13 EastA....M.....B West

2930 Each night Mars seems to be more east of the star pattern near it. But between nights
 2931 4 and 11 Mars appears more west and after a number of nights, then reverse course
 2932 and continue its nightly progression eastward. This is called “**retrograde motion**”
 2933 and it surely must have confused everyone. Certainly the common description of
 2934 retrograde motion as a “motion” is confusing nomenclature since the “movement”
 2935 is actually over many nights.

2936 **Sun’s apparent motion.** That smart Greek’s days (and ours) would be dominated
 2937 by the Sun. If you’re in the northern hemisphere, in general you’d see it appear to
 2938 rise over your eastern horizon, pass not quite overhead, and then disappear over
 2939 your western horizon. Look at Figure ?? which plots the Sun’s trajectories through
 2940 a year for East Lansing, Michigan which is at a latitude of 42.74° . On December
 2941 21st the Sun takes its lowest path, the days are the shortest because the Sun rises
 2942 south of east and sets south of west. The lowest Sun path in the figure shows the
 2943 situation at noon on December 21st, 2024 which is the day of the **Winter Solstice**.
 2944 Every day after, you would notice that the Sun’s eastern rise is a little bit north from
 2945 the day before and that it would set a little bit further north as well and so each day
 2946 would be a little longer. Furthermore, at noon the point each day when it’s at its
 2947 peak would be just a little higher than the previous day. Then on June 20th, the Sun
 2948 has gone as far up as it will and is nearly overhead at noon, rising and setting quite
 2949 a bit north of east and west, so that day is the longest of the year. Then the situation
 2950 reverses and the Sun is lower every day until the next December. Between those
 2951 extremes the paths are different slightly each day.

2952 In that round trip, there’s one day on the way up and one day on the way down
 2953 when the Sun rises precisely in the east and sets precisely in the west and at noon,
 2954 it’s height above your horizon is exactly between those two extremes during late

2955 December and June. Also on those two days, the day and night durations are
 2956 the same all over the world: 12 hours and so each is called an **equinox**.⁸ These
 2957 points happen in late March (called the Vernal Equinox)⁹ and late September (the
 2958 Autumnal Equinox).¹⁰ Each **equinox** is a precise astronomical event and marks the
 2959 point when the Sun passes through the Celestial Sphere on its way up or down. In
 2960 Figure ??, you can see that the trajectory of the Sun's path in the middle is dotted
 2961 rather than dashed to highlight that this is a special day: the Sun's path is very close
 2962 to the Celestial Sphere circle and crosses it at the precise time of that day defining
 2963 both of the equinoxes. In 2024, those moments are March 19th at 11:06 PM EDT and
 2964 September 22nd 8:44 AM EDT.

2965 Equinoxes are distinct events
 2966 throughout ancient history, across
 2967 cultures. The Vernal (or Spring)
 2968 Equinox was celebrated around the
 2969 world: from the Mayans to the an-
 2970 cient Germanic tribes to the an-
 2971 cient Saxons the VE was celebrated as a
 2972 time of renewal and rebirth. Struc-
 2973 tures like Stonehenge, the Mayan
 2974 pyramids, the Egyptian Pyramid
 2975 of Khafre, and others in Cambodia,
 2976 Ireland, and New Mexico point
 2977 out the VE. Understanding them,
 2978 though, only became a goal among
 2979 a few Hellenistic Greeks when
 2980 "solar models" were invented
 2981 by mathematically clever and
 2982 imaginative astronomers. As our
 2983 story unfolds, notice how the
 2984 Sun figures into every corner of
 2985 ancient astronomy—and yet, it
 2986 was considered to be just another
 2987 orbiting object.

2988 Clearly associated with the Sun are the seasons and they aren't the same length—
 2989 spring and summer are longer than fall and winter, but there are definite times of
 2990 cold and warm weather in the two hemispheres. In 2023 in the northern hemisphere:

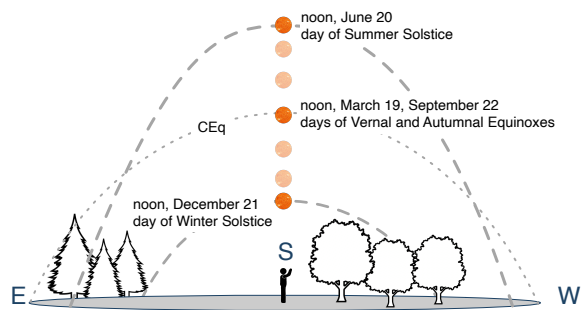


Figure 3.6: An observer looking south would see the Sun take very different paths through the year. Of course the Sun moves from east to west, but at various altitudes. This figure shows the situation for East Lansing, Michigan which is at a latitude of 42.74° above the Earth's equator. On December 21st the Sun takes its lowest path and the days are the shortest and the Sun's rising and setting is south of east and west. On June 20th, the Sun is nearly overhead with rising and setting north of east and west, so the days are long. Between those extremes the paths are different slightly each day.

In the middle period on

⁸This derives from the Latin *aequus*, for "equal" and *nox*, for "night."

⁹Latin for "spring" is *ver*.

¹⁰In 2023, the WS, VE, SS, and AE occur on December 22, 2023, 3:27 AM, March 20, 2023, 9:24 PM, June 21, 2023, 2:57 PM, and September 23, 2023, 6:49 AM, GMT

2991 after 89 days in 2022, winter ended; spring was 93 days long; Summer was 94; and
 2992 Autumn was 89. The Athenian astronomers Meton and his student, Euctemon
 2993 found 92, 93, 90, and 90 days in about –432, so this was a known problem. (The
 2994 student also has a lunar crater named for him.)

2995 **The apparent motion of the Moon.** Promi-
 2996 nent for its size and its regularly changing
 2997 features is our Moon. If looked at from over-
 2998 head, it travels in a clockwise orbit, nearly
 2999 circular, with a period of 27.322 days, chang-
 3000 ing its appearance through phases during
 3001 that cycle.



Figure 3.7: Views of the familiar faces of the Moon through a month, not showing the new Moon phase. Getty

3002 Unlike the Sun and the stars, the Moon
 3003 changes its appearance every single night.
 3004 Sometimes it's "full" and a bright circle.
 3005 Sometimes it's not there at night, but maybe
 3006 visible during the daytime. Most times the bright part of the Moon is a crescent
 3007 shape, culminating in a half-circle, and then back to crescent. Occasionally, the
 3008 Moon gets in the way of the Sun and we have a solar eclipse. Sometimes the Earth
 3009 blocks the Moon from the Sun and we have a lunar eclipse. Why these events don't
 3010 happen every month was a puzzle. One thing doesn't change about the Moon and
 3011 that's the face that we see—another puzzle.

3012 Puzzled about these observations? If you can't wait for Copernicus, Tycho, Kepler,
 3013 and Galileo...then take a look at *Greek Astronom, Today* in Section ?? for our modern
 3014 interpretation how it goes.

3015 3.3 A Little Bit of Presocratic Astronomy

3016 Pythagoras • Philolaus • Parmenides • Archytas
 3017 (Set the context with the timeline in Figure ?? on page ??.)

3018 In Chapter ??, I briefly discussed the Presocratics' cosmologies with two ideas
 3019 among them that were shared: all but two appeared to believe in a flat, and station-
 3020 ary Earth. The two who thought differently were Pythagoras and Parmenides.

3021 **Parmenides** had a number of original ideas about the heavens—in particular,
 3022 he may have been the first to conceive of the whole universe as being spherical
 3023 (Pythagoras/Philolaus might also have determined this) and finite.

3024 "...like the mass of a well-rounded sphere, from one middle, equal in every respect."
 3025 Parmenides

3026 He was also apparently the first Greek to note that the Moon reflected the light of
3027 the Sun and must be spherical and he was even poetic about it:

3028 "[the moon is a body] shining by night, wandering around earth with borrowed
3029 light..." Parmenides

3030 "Borrowed light" is a nice phrase. If the Moon "borrows" its light from the Sun
3031 and doesn't shine on its own, then the shape of the phases of the Moon lead to a
3032 spherical shape conclusion.¹¹ Ironic, isn't it that Parmenides can perhaps be credited
3033 with a scientific discovery—one that requires observation—when we tend to think
3034 of him as anti-scientific.

3035 **The Pythagorean team** (probably more Philolaus than Pythagoras, so I'll call it col-
3036 lectively "Pythagorean/Philolaus") extrapolated their fondness for regular motions,
3037 musical tones, and numbers and built a cosmology that tried to put all of these
3038 commitments into one model. They were responsible for many "firsts" in Greek
3039 astronomy: they too hypothesized that the Universe is spherical, most credit them
3040 with establishing that the Earth is spherical (for metaphysical and symmetry rea-
3041 sons), they proposed a popular ordering of the planets (Earth, Moon, Sun, Mercury,
3042 Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn...surrounded by the stars), they hypothesized that
3043 the planets' speeds are inversely proportional to the size of their orbits, and they
3044 concluded that the "morning star" and "evening star" (our Venus) were not two
3045 different planets but the same one which is close to the Sun. And, crucially: they
3046 were the first to propose that the planets follow circular orbits around a center.

3047 There was a first version of Pythagorean/Philolaus cosmology in which the Earth
3048 is at the center of the universe containing a "central fire" or "Hestia," in homage
3049 to the immobile goddess of the hearth. But that morphed into the cosmology of
3050 Chapter ?? with the "central fire" situated in the center of the universe, relegating
3051 Earth to be just another celestial object orbiting around it in circular orbits. Figure ??
3052 (a) shows the whole system with the Earth, Moon, Sun, and the planets orbiting
3053 counterclockwise around the center and inside an outer shell of the stars. The Earth
3054 orbits the central fire once a day and the Sun, once a year. So the Earth daily catches
3055 up and passes the Sun accounting for day and night.

3056 We don't see a "central fire" and there were two proposals as to why, shown
3057 in Figure ?? (b) and (c). The standard interpretation is the second one in which
3058 inhabitants of the Earth are shielded from the fire by the presence of a "counter
3059 earth" which strategically blocks it, see **Dreyer1953**. Without the counter earth there
3060 are only nine components to the universe and so Aristotle was critical of them for

¹¹It was traditional to credit Parmenides with extrapolating from a spherical Moon to declaring that the Earth, too, is spherical. But that's not authenticated and Pythagoreans' claim to a spherical Earth is perhaps more likely.

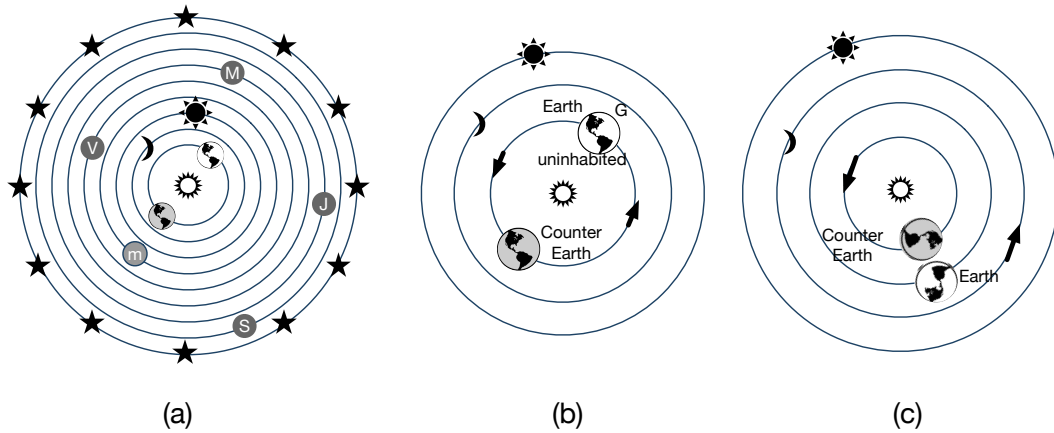


Figure 3.8: (a) shows the Pythagorean system with all of the heavenly bodies and the Earth orbiting the central fire in a counterclockwise sense. In (b) the Earth is shown in one of a number of interpretations of Philolaus' system. Greece (G) is on the far side, leaving the side facing the fire without people. In this orientation it's morning as the Earth is catching up with the slower-moving Sun. In (c) the counter earth is positioned so that it blocks the central fire.

3061 perhaps arbitrarily adding the counter earth just to make the total 10, as suggested
 3062 in Dicks1970.

3063 This is the first cosmology based on a *regular, circular* MOTION IN THE HEAVENS
 3064 and a model in which MOTION BY THE EARTH is not zero. The idea of course has
 3065 spawned 2000 years of astronomical research! Circles, everywhere.

3066 3.3.1 Summary of the Astronomy of Parmenides, Pythagoras, and Philolaus

3067 (Set the context with the timeline in Figure ?? on page ??.)

- 3068 • Parmenides (−514 to −450):
 - 3069 – He was first to assert that the whole universe was spherical.
 - 3070 – He was perhaps the first to recognize that the Moon does not shine
 - 3071 by its own light, but reflected (“borrowed”) light from the Sun. The
 - 3072 Pythagoreans might also have realized that.
- 3073 • Pythagoreans [Pythagoras (−575 to −500) especially including Philolaus
 3074 (−470 to −385)]:
 - 3075 – “They” were first to realize that the Earth is spherical.
 - 3076 – “They” were first to hypothesize a particular ordering of the planets,
 - 3077 perhaps with the their orbit size inversely proportional to their speeds.
 - 3078 – “They” realized that the “morning” star and “evening” star were the
 - 3079 same planet, Venus.
 - 3080 – “They” were to propose a model in which the planets (including Earth

3081 and Sun) all orbited a central point (for them, the mysterious “central
 3082 fire.”) in perfectly circular orbits.
 3083 – Their insistence on heavenly motions being uniform and circular outlived
 3084 their specific model.

3085 3.4 Act VII Plato and Exodus' Models

3086 Plato • Eudoxus • Aristotle
 3087 (Set the context with the timeline in Figure ?? on page ??.)

3088 In Chapter 1 we touched on Plato's cosmology in *Timaeus* but that was a late
 3089 development for him as his ideas about the nature of the cosmos grew over almost
 3090 his whole career. His learning from Archytas in mathematics and the symmetry
 3091 tendencies of the Pythagoreans launched him in the direction of building everything
 3092 around circles, and then spheres.

3093 Recall that the *Republic* was nominally a treatise on the nature of justice and how to
 3094 build a just state which he proposes be totalitarian. When philosophy and political
 3095 science students read it, they're probably surprised by its ending, which is a full-on
 3096 Pythagorean cosmology, the “Myth of Er.”

3097 “Once upon a time he died in war; and on the **tenth day**, when the corpses, already
 3098 decayed, were picked up, he was picked up in a good state of preservation. Having
 3099 been brought home, he was about to be buried on the twelfth day; as he was lying on
 3100 the pyre, he came back to life, and, come back to life, he told what he saw in the other
 3101 world.” Plato, *Republic*

3102 Socrates is trying to motivate why someone should live a good life and relates a
 3103 cosmic carrot-and-stick story, not unfamiliar to other religious admonitions. Er is a
 3104 soldier who was killed and does what all deceased do. . . they go to a place where
 3105 their lives are evaluated, not by St. Peter at the Pearly Gates, but by four judges who
 3106 tell him that he's got a job to do: after 10 days¹² his body will be retrieved from the
 3107 battlefield and on day 12 he's to be resurrected from the dead, dramatically on his
 3108 own pyre before it's lit. He's to tell others what he's seen which includes a strange
 3109 vision of a pillar of light that extends to the heavens which Plato describes as a
 3110 spindle and whorl used for spinning wool. Figure ?? (a) shows a Roman woman
 3111 spinning wool with the weighted whorl at the bottom which spins as she works.
 3112 Figure ?? (b) is the umbrella-like structure (the whorl upside down) that Socrates
 3113 describes:

3114 “Its shape was that of (whorls) in our world, but. . . it was as if in one great whorl,
 3115 hollow and scooped out, there lay enclosed, right through, another like it but smaller,

¹²Why 10 days? some Pythagoreanism is maybe showing?

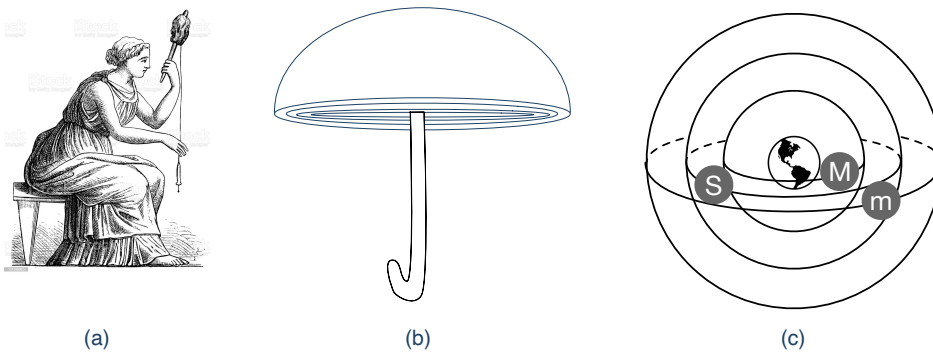


Figure 3.9: The figure in (a) is a Roman sketch of a woman spinning wool using a spindle and whorl, which is the weight at the bottom with a hook. The image in (b) is Plato's description of the whorl actually hollowed out with nested layers of whirl-shaped half-spheres. The image in (c) is the cosmos that the onion-layered whorl represents with the Moon; Sun; and the first planet, Mercury attached to the first three of eight spheres. I've only included three in this cartoon.

3116 fitting into it **as containers** that fit into one another, and in like matter another. . . There
 3117 were **eight of the whorls** in all, lying within one another. . .” Plato, *Republic*

3118 The eight “containers” are hinted at in my sketch in Figure ?? (b) and the whole is
 3119 abstracted as nested spheres in Figure ?? (c), where I've only shown three spheres
 3120 (remember, “containers”) for simplicity. Earth is no longer a “regular” planet but
 3121 is in the center with concentric spheres of the Moon, Sun, the outer planets, and
 3122 again, the stars on the furthest shell, which Socrates says is “speckled.” So, Plato's
 3123 first cosmology has MOTION BY THE EARTH as zero and MOTION IN THE HEAVENS
 3124 is described as Pythagorean, but using spheres, not just circles. He also tells you
 3125 how they move and the sounds that they emit as a Siren sits on each sphere and
 3126 sings a tone. This is the world's first three dimensional cosmological model. But
 3127 the it didn't match what the planets do and Plato actually tried to remedy it in the
 3128 *Timaeus*. Given his penchant for not modeling appearances, this was an unusual
 3129 move and suggests to me that getting it right was (briefly?) important to him.

3130 The *Timaeus* is Plato's “origin story” and in the previous chapter I described the
 3131 Craftsman's efforts to create matter using geometric three dimensional shapes.
 3132 It's also his cosmology update from the *Republic* and quite different. Socrates
 3133 teases the story out of the main character, Timaeus—a Pythagorean—and then
 3134 uncharacteristically allows the speaker have the floor without much interruption.
 3135 It's where Plato becomes mathematical, in a spooky, Pythagorean way.

3136 Does this string of numbers mean anything to you: 1,2,3,4,9,8,27? Me neither, but
 3137 they function as a part of the instructions to the Craftsman in order to build the

3138 universe following a numerology algorithm described in a nearly unintelligible
3139 paragraph:

3140 “And he began the division in this way. First he took **one portion**
3141 from the whole, and next a **portion double of this**; the **third half as much again as**
3142 **the second**, and **three times the first**; the **fourth double of the second**; the **fifth three**
3143 **times the third**; the **sixth eight times the first**; and the **seventh twenty-seven times**
3144 **the first.**” Plato, *Timaeus*

3145 *Timaeus* is tough to read (impenetrable in some places) and so I’ve unpacked the
3146 algorithm from the paragraph in Appendix ???. The upshot is that the Craftsman
3147 has fashioned a universe with two rotating spheres. One of them he calls “the same”
3148 and represents the (unavoidable) rotating Celestial Sphere. The other he calls “the
3149 different” which is inclined to the first. Those numbers represent the relative sizes
3150 of the layers inside of that inclined sphere where the planets are arranged. His Er
3151 story didn’t account for the ecliptic, and this “different” sphere set is that correction.

3152 “This whole fabric, then, he split lengthwise into **two halves**; and making the **two**
3153 **cross one another** at their centers in the form of the letter X, he bent each round into a
3154 circle and joined it up, making each meet itself and the other at a point opposite to
3155 that where they had been brought into contact.” Plato, *Republic*

3156 Figure ?? is a silly attempt to illustrate this. Figure ?? (a) is a person playing with
3157 a hula hoop, perfectly aligned so that the axis of the toy’s rotational plane points
3158 through our person’s head. This represents the axis and equator of the Celestial
3159 Sphere around the Earth. Figure ?? (b) shows just how good this person is at hula
3160 hoops: two are rotating, the original, and another that somehow our friend manages
3161 to get to rotate at an angle relative to the first one. Some serious hip-action would
3162 be required. This represents the ecliptic, inclined by that spacing corresponding to
3163 the latitude of the observer. Those strange numbers? Well, there would actually
3164 be seven hoops with diameters proportional to those numbers: 1–2–3–4–8–9–27.
Figure ?? shows what this is really about.

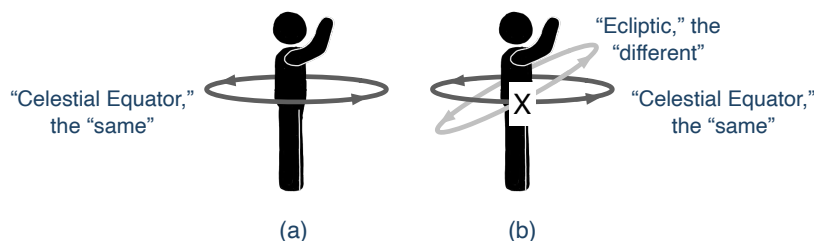


Figure 3.10: Pretty good hula hoops chops.

3165

3166 The celestial sphere and its axis I’ve called the NCP (north celestial pole) in the
3167 diagram. The other strip is the equator of the other, ecliptic, sphere (with axis

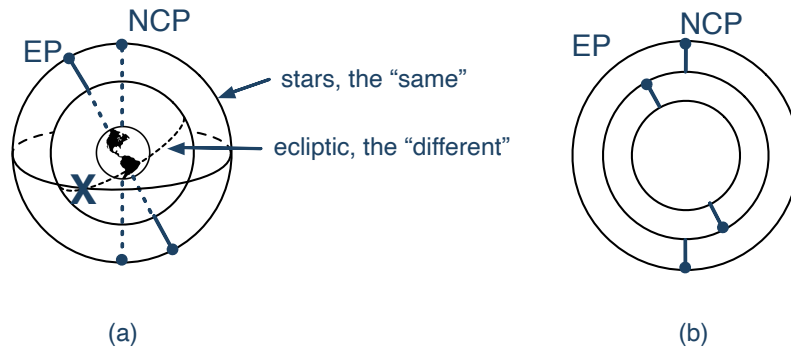


Figure 3.11: (a) shows the two spheres with their equators. One the Celestial Sphere (carrying the stars around the Earth each night, so an axis centered on the North Pole of the Earth) and the other is the ecliptic (in which the planets reside as they appear to go around the Earth) with the pole of that sphere, the North Ecliptic Pole. (b) takes away the three-dimensional view and will be a useful sketch for these kinds of constructions in what follows.

3168 labelled EP) which makes an “X” where it crosses in two places with the Same.
 3169 (These are the points of the equinoxes, when the Sun on the ecliptic crosses the
 3170 Celestial Equator.) Inside of this strip, the segments correspond to the locations of
 3171 the Moon, Sun, Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn. Of course, this is a little
 3172 mad but Eudoxus took on the task of turning this story into a geometrical model.

3173 3.4.1 Eudoxus’ Model

3174 By the time Eudoxus had returned to the Academy, he would have been familiar
 3175 with the *Republic* and probably *Timeaus*. Once Plato had inserted the ecliptic path,
 3176 he still needed to explain retrograde motion. And he knew it:

3177 “...as for the dances of these and how they relate to each other, the **backward-**
 3178 **cycles and forward-progressions** of the circles to each other... to speak without visual
 3179 representations of these same would be a **vain effort.**” Plato, *Timeaus*

3180 So, he realized the problem... but had no solution and just gives up (“vain effort”).
 3181 He was out of his depth but Eudoxus was ready and came up with a brilliantly
 3182 complex model and while it’s not known what Plato thought of it, it’s clear how
 3183 Aristotle reacted: he made it his. It’s intricate, so let’s go to the box and work out
 3184 the inner workings of the idea and then skip to the end. Look at Figure Box ?? on
 3185 page ?. After you’ve read the material in that Box, return to this point ↶ and
 3186 continue reading.

3187 The figure in Box ?? describes the tool-kit that Eudoxus used to construct a full
 3188 model of each planet in which they ride on the equators of coupled, spinning

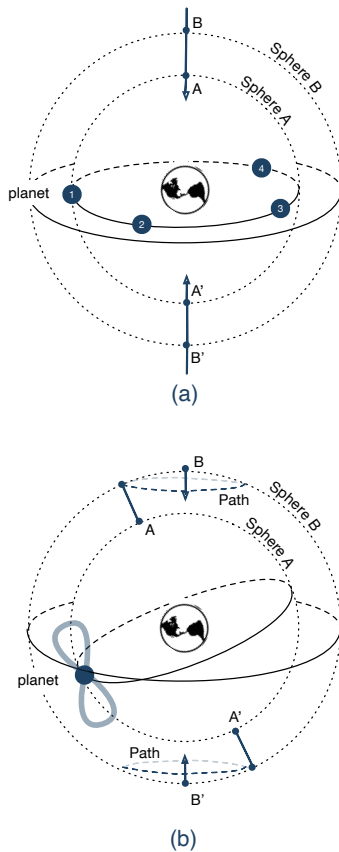
3189 spheres. The two spheres shown in the box form the minimal number of moving
3190 parts unique to every planet and they are each embedded inside of two other
3191 spheres, one for the ecliptic whose equator includes the rough paths of the planets
3192 and the other is the Celestial Sphere which includes the motions of the stars around
3193 the Earth every nearly 24 hours. Let's take it slow in Figure ??.

3194 The fundamental Eudoxus set was four spheres, centered on the Earth. Using the
3195 nomenclature from Figure ?? and Box ??, labeling them from the inside out:

- 3196 A: the sphere to which the planet is attached,
3197 B: the next sphere which precesses around that inner sphere (producing Eudox-
3198 ian figure-eight)
3199 C: the sphere that rotates around the ecliptic—that stretches out that Eudoxian
3200 figure 8 in Figure ?? to produce retrograde motion, and
3201 D: the outer-most sphere that rotates daily showing the pattern of the starry
3202 Celestial Sphere.

3203

FIGURE BOX ??



The model that Eudoxus created is an impressive bit of geometry mixed with inspired imagination. It's the famous "nested spheres" model that made it all the way to the Baroque as an explanation for the odd motions of the planets. In a very modern way, it's full of parameters that could be tweaked to make it fit the observations...some of which he made himself at the observatory he created in his school before he returned to Athens.

Imagine taking two hoops, one of which is slightly smaller than the other and is attached inside the larger one across their mutual diameters. Figure ?? (a) shows this with a "planet" attached to the equator of the inside hoop. Now if we spin that hoop around its axis AA' the planet will follow a circle from position 1 through 2, 3, 4 and so on. This spinning *observed from the outside* essentially defines a sphere, Sphere A, here centered on the Earth. If the two hoops are attached, and if the outer hoop spins around its axis, BB' , creating the surface of Sphere B, then the motion of the planet will be the sum of the two speeds at the hoop pair equators. So if the outer hoop spins at the same rate as the inner hoop, but in the opposite direction, then the planet would appear to the

Earth to remain stationary at position 1.

Now imagine that the axis of the inner hoop is attached at a point offset on the surface of the Sphere B as shown in Figure ?? (b). Now when Sphere B spins, it takes the AA' axis of Sphere A around with it tracing the path shown. In addition, if Sphere B spins while its following that path independently, the motion is a complicated figure eight pattern as shown. Eudoxus figured this out and named the shape a "hippedede" which is "horse fetter" in Greek. (A fetter is like a chain.) Now there are many variables at work which would alter the shape of the hippedede: the speeds of the two spheres and the angle at which AA' axis of Sphere A is inclined to the BB' axis of Sphere B.

Now go back to page ?? and pick up where you left off.

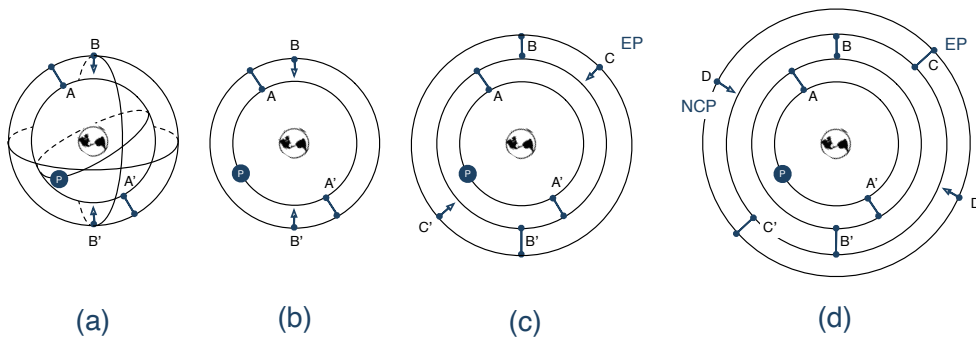


Figure 3.13: (a) is a slightly different rendering of Figure ???. (b) is an abstraction of (a) taking out some of the lines that suggest a solid sphere, for clarity. (c) includes the sphere of the ecliptic (EP for Ecliptic pole is shown) with axis of rotation CC' . Notice that it's attached to the outer sphere of Eudoxus' tool-kit pair. And (d) includes the sphere of the outer stars, the celestial sphere (NCP for the North Celestial Pole is shown) and the ecliptic sphere is attached to it.

3204 All of these separate motions are coupled... and that's just for one planet! By tuning
 3205 the inner two spheres' rotation speeds and the inclination of their inner axes, the
 3206 motions of the planet can be made to do the figure-eight dance at just the right
 3207 time of year and with the right elongation in the sky—to make the planet appear
 3208 to reverse direction and recover, and resume as viewed by the Earth. Each planet
 3209 required four spheres and the Sun and Moon required three each, plus the Celestial
 3210 Sphere: 27 spheres to do the job. This was a mammoth intellectual puzzle that
 3211 Eudoxus created and then solved with those relatively simple pieces of interlocking
 3212 spheres.

3213 It still didn't quite do the job as well as it might and in the best tradition of what
 3214 Thomas Kuhn would have called "Normal Science," **Callippus of Cyzicus** (–370 to
 3215 –300) tried to make it better without starting over. He was a student of Plato's and
 3216 worked with Aristotle and worried about the seasons' length problem and some
 3217 finer points of the planets' motions. He added two additional spheres for the Sun
 3218 and Moon and one each for Mercury, Venus, and Mars for a total of seven more. So
 3219 now: 34 spheres. Was it all just an exercise in geometry? Perhaps. The Eudoxian
 3220 program of research was abstract without numbers and so no predictive capability.
 3221 It might indeed have been more of a story than a scientific model, like Plato, and
 3222 like Aristotle's will be.

3223 Around –370, Eudoxus also apparently created a star catalog in his book *Phenomena*
 3224 of at least 47 stars which a century later were memorialized in the famous poem of
 3225 that same name by Aratus that I introduced in the preface to this chapter. These
 3226 entries were not numerical or with coordinates, but were story-like recording the

3227 times of the rise, set, and position overhead of constellations or stars near parts of
 3228 constellations. For example, “As a guide the Ram and the knees of the Bull lie on it,
 3229 the Ram as drawn lengthwise along the circle, but of the Bull only the widely visible
 3230 bend of the legs. On it is the belt of the radiant Orion and the coil of the blazing
 3231 Hydra, on it too are the faint Bowl, on it the Raven, on it the not very numerous
 3232 stars of the Claws, and on it the knees of Ophiuchus ride. It is certainly not bereft of
 3233 the Eagle: it has the great messenger of Zeus flying near by; and along it the Horse’s
 3234 head and neck move round.” (duke2008). What we know of Eudoxus’ catalog come
 3235 to us from Aratus and the later Hipparchus’ critique of the poem and by extension,
 3236 Eudoxus’ work.

3237 3.5 Act VIII Aristotle’s Model

3238 When it came to astronomy, Aristotle was downright derivative. Ironically, his
 3239 model that became Church dogma wasn’t his, and to make matters worse, it was
 3240 flawed and largely ignored soon after he died. How it went from forgotten to
 3241 dogma is the story of Chapter ??, but let’s see what he actually did and why. His
 3242 astronomical writings were scattered throughout two large books, *On the Heavens*
 3243 and *Meteorologies* and his solutions to known problems were a mixture of pure
 3244 metaphysics, physics—often relying on his own rules of motion as authoritative,—
 3245 and the observations of others. Aristotle didn’t observe the heavens.

3246 3.5.1 Properties of the Earth, Aristotle-style

3247 Aristotle vigorously disagreed with the Pythagorean/Philolaus cosmology in which
 3248 the Earth orbits the center of the universe and devised challenges defending a
 3249 stationary Earth that any future moving-Earth proponent would have to meet
 3250 squarely.

3251 **The Earth** Pythagorean/Philolaus adherents proposed that the Earth is spherical,
 3252 arguing largely from aesthetic grounds, namely that circles are good and spheres
 3253 are good and so the Earth should be spherical as well. Oh, and that the universe is
 3254 spherical and so must be the Earth.

3255 Aristotle proposed multiple, more concrete reasons why. First, when one observes a
 3256 lunar eclipse, one sees that the shape of the demarcation between light and dark is
 3257 always convex. So if the Earth’s shadow is the explanation for the eclipse, then the
 3258 Earth must be at least circular, if not spherical. He knew from reports that people in
 3259 the southern latitudes saw different stars on their horizon than those in the northern
 3260 latitudes. He argued against those who insisted (still) that the Earth was flat by

3261 noting that the horizon looks flat, but that's simply because the Earth is large.¹³

3262 He also had a physics reason. Since earthy material would naturally be aimed
 3263 at the center of the universe then all earthy material would be drawn to a single
 3264 point and highly compressed equally in all dimensions with the result: a sphere
 3265 of earthiness. That sphere would be surrounded by a thick sphere of water. That
 3266 would be surrounded by a sphere of air and then fire. So a spherical double-double-
 3267 decker sandwich of the four terrestrial elements filling up the whole volume below
 3268 the Moon, the "sub-lunar realm." This argument supported two other Aristotelian-
 3269 imperatives: that the Earth finds itself in the center of the universe and that it's
 3270 stationary.

3271 **The Stellar Parallax Argument** Finally, he makes a good argument for the stationary
 3272 Earth which becomes the essential challenge to any future moving Earth cosmology.

3273 Look at a point across your room with one eye closed and put your finger in front
 3274 of you and notice what's behind it on a wall or distant surface. Now switch eyes
 3275 and notice that the what's behind your finger now seems to have moved. If you
 3276 open and close each alternate eye successively, the background will appear to jump
 3277 from side to side relative to your finger. This is called "parallax" and it's because
 3278 your eyes are attractively located inches apart from one another on your face and
 3279 enough so that the lines of sight from each are slightly different.

3280 If the Earth is orbiting a center, then at one point of the year a particular star would
 3281 appear as a line at a particular angle (like your right eye open). Then at the half-
 3282 way-point around its orbit (six months later if the orbit is around the Sun), when the
 3283 Earth is on the other side of that center (like your left eye open), look for that same
 3284 star and it will be at a completely different angle. "**Stellar parallax**" or "annual
 3285 parallax" is the name of this phenomenon and we'll see it more than once in our
 3286 story.

3287 Nobody observed stellar parallax leaving only two explanations. Either the Earth
 3288 doesn't move around a center of revolution, or the stars are so far away that parallax
 3289 isn't visible. Nobody was prepared to imagine a universe that big, and so the
 3290 conclusion was that MOTION BY THE EARTH is zero.¹⁴

3291 He agreed with Parmenides and the Pythagoreans that the light from the Moon is
 3292 reflected light, that the shape of the crescent of the Moon's phases suggests that the
 3293 it must be a sphere. From that and his spherical Earth hypothesis, he reasoned that
 3294 all of the heavenly bodies are likely spherical, albeit made from different stuff.

¹³Nowhere in Aristotle is the famous alleged argument attributed to him that when ships begin to appear on the horizon that first the mast and then the hull are observed.

¹⁴It took until the 19th century to actually observe stellar parallax because the universe really is that big.

3295 For millennia, Aristotle has been held responsible for the theory of five elementary
 3296 substances: in *On the Heavens* he added what he called the “first body” to the familiar
 3297 earth, water, air, and fire. Much later this was renamed “the fifth element;” and later,
 3298 the “aether;” and later than that, the Latinate, “quintessence.” In spite of almost
 3299 all popular and even scholarly sources, Aristotle never identifies his first body as
 3300 “aether” although he was surely aware that Plato used that term explicitly. History
 3301 assigns Cicero from the first century BCE, as the source of Aristotle’s reference to
 3302 “aether” with the assumption that famous Roman orator had access to now lost
 3303 Aristotelean manuscripts. Or, given our repeated reminder that much of what we
 3304 know of the Greeks is muddled...it’s possible that Aristotle never used the word.
 3305 I’ll use “aether” as it will become a useful contrast with the 19th century “ether,” the
 3306 direct experimental lead-in to Relativity. And, by the way: Aristotle is often said to
 3307 have insisted that the Eudoxian spheres were crystalline, the “Crystalline Spheres”
 3308 were indeed an assumption in Medieval and Renaissance times, but nowhere does
 3309 Aristotle refer to this. (See, **hahm1982**)

3310 Aristotle’s aether is eternal, not composite, neither heavy nor light, and is the most
 3311 divine of all of the heavenly objects. So it’s not anything like the four Aristotelian
 3312 elements, but for some reason he holds heavenly objects to some of the same physics
 3313 as terrestrial objects.

3314 **The Sky** The heavens differ from terrestrial objects in an obvious way: the night
 3315 sky repeated, every night, while everything on the Earth seems less ordered. Sure
 3316 falling objects executed their motions according to rules, but every object’s behavior
 3317 is different so the eternal permanence of the heavenly motion contrasts with the
 3318 impermanence and changeability of MOTION ON THE EARTH. Furthermore, for
 3319 Aristotle natural motions near the Earth were in straight lines—with a beginning
 3320 and an end. But the motions of the heavenly bodies seem circular, and so, never-
 3321 ending...eternal. Obviously, then, the deep sky is made of special, different stuff.

3322 Aristotle’s universe is a finite volume in space all the way to the outermost starry
 3323 sphere, like that of the Pythagoreans. Furthermore, it’s always been there and he
 3324 speculates on and rejects an argument about the possible creation of the universe.
 3325 So he disagrees with Plato. That for him would presume that before that event,
 3326 there was already a notion of up and down and that bothered him. So, the universe
 3327 is a finite volume in space, but of infinite extent in time.

3328 3.5.2 Aristotle’s Cosmology

3329 The basic features of Aristotle’s cosmology were the same as Plato’s as were
 3330 his ordering of the planets (and different from what Philolaus assumed for the
 3331 Pythagorean model): Earth–Moon–Sun–Mercury–Venus–Mars–Jupiter–Saturn and

3332 the stars. Ever the mechanist, he worried about real material concerns: *how* do they
3333 *actually* move as a composite unit?

3334 First, he knew that what was required was a model of the whole universe—Eudoxus'
3335 model was a template for each planet, not a whole cosmos— and so each of those
3336 sets of spheres needed to all be packaged together into one big onion of spheres,
3337 one set inside of another. And this became his problem: since he couldn't have
3338 Jupiter's motions affecting Saturns and Mars' motions, he needed to "mechanically"
3339 decouple each one.

3340 Remember that I noted that if you had two connected Eudoxian spheres rotating at
3341 the same speeds, but in opposite directions, that their motions would cancel one
3342 another. Aristotle took that idea and intentionally inserted "rewinding spheres"
3343 to do that in such a way to preserve the spheres' connections to the ecliptic and
3344 celestial spheres but to isolate them.

3345 Table ?? shows that for all of the planets but the Moon and Sun, four spheres were
3346 sufficient for Eudoxus. (The Sun and Moon didn't need the daily, celestial sphere
3347 rotation.) Callippus added spheres for the inner planets, Sun, Moon, and Mars. It
3348 was these 33 spheres that Aristotle then tried to turn into an actual seven-object,
3349 whole system.

Table 3.1: The number of spheres for each of the Eudoxian systems for the Moon, Sun, and planets—not including the outer sphere of the fixed stars—with the Aristotelian unwinding spheres counted separately in the last column.

Planet	Eudoxus	Callippus	Aristotle	Unwinding
Saturn	4	4	4	3
Jupiter	4	4	4	3
Mars	4	5	5	4
Sun	3	5	5	4
Venus	4	5	5	4
Mercury	4	5	5	4
Moon	3	5	5	
Total:	26	33	33	+22 = 55

3350 It is necessary, if all the spheres put together are going to account for the observed
3351 phenomena, that for each of the planetary bodies there should be other counteracting
3352 ["unrolling"] spheres, one fewer in number [than Callippus]...for only thus is it
3353 possible for the whole system to produce the revolution of the planets." Aristotle,
3354 *Meteorologies*.

3355 Figure ?? (a) shows a rendering of the 55 Aristotelean spheres (from
3356 <https://brunelleschi.imss.fi.it/vitrum/evtr.asp?c=8252>. (b) shows a typical
3357 Medieval picture of Aristotle's cosmology, the Prime Mover is noted (see below),

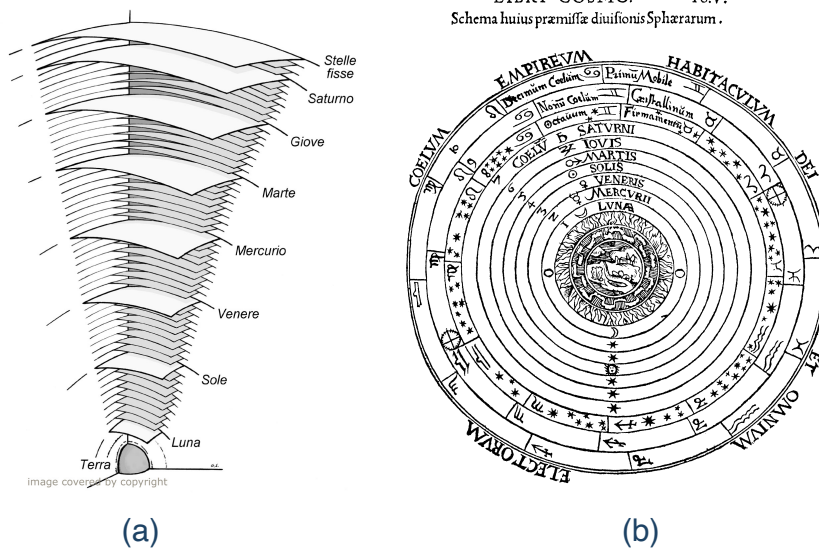


Figure 3.14: (a) Representation of the 55 spheres of Aristotle's model. Notice that Jupiter (Italian, Giove) has one too many layers and that the Moon (Luna) is depicted as having none. (Museo Galileo. (b) is a typical Medieval representation of the Aristotelean cosmology.

3358 and in the center, the four Aristotelean elements are drawn. But there's an
 3359 interesting difference: the planetary order is not Aristotle's but from later.¹⁵ Again,
 3360 he was always fascinated with his own ideas about motion and for some reason,
 3361 he assumed that bodies made of the completely unique aether still needed to
 3362 follow his physics and causal rules. Why didn't he just say that aether spheres just
 3363 naturally isolate themselves, one set from another?

3364 In that same sticking-to-the-terrestrial-rules spirit, he seemed believe that the
 3365 spheres needed a cause in order to execute their natural, circular motion and that
 3366 drives his model into strange places. Just like *unnatural motion* for terrestrial objects
 3367 required a contact pusher, inexplicably he decided that the *natural, circular motion* of
 3368 his spheres *also needed contact pushers*. That creates an embarrassing regress problem.
 3369 Every sphere had its very own pusher and so did the outer, star sphere, but how
 3370 does that last pusher itself remain stationary in order to be able to move that last
 3371 sphere? Another pusher? He complicated this by insisting that the pushers had
 3372 themselves no substance, were outside of space and time, and were essentially pure
 3373 intellect. He called them "unmoved movers" or "Prime Movers" and the idea was
 3374 a soft toss to Thomas Aquinas 1600 years later to equate the Primer Mover with the
 3375 Catholic deity.

¹⁵Aristotle seems to have made at least one mistake and actually had two models, one of 47 and the other of 55 spheres. Nobody knows why.

3376 Aristotle's astronomy is underwhelming and unsatisfying and it didn't solve the ma-
 3377 jor issues endemic to an Earth-centered cosmology: since the model required each
 3378 planet to be always the same distance from Earth, why do they vary in brightness?
 3379 And a relatively new problem in his time: why are the seasons, autumn, winter,
 3380 spring, and fall, all of different durations? These brought Aristotelean modeling to
 3381 a halt. New ideas were required.

3382 3.5.3 Summary of the Astronomy of Plato, Eudoxus, and Aristotle

3383 (Set the context with the timeline in Figure ?? on page ??.)

3384 By the time that Aristotle was done, astronomy had converged on a qualitative,
 3385 "picture-model" built by two philosophers and a mathematician.

- 3386 • Plato (–427 to –348):
 - 3387 – He placed the Earth is at the center of the universe.
 - 3388 – He modeled the planets as attached to spinning spheres.
 - 3389 – He proposed that the outer star-sphere spins around the Earth once a
 3390 day.
 - 3391 – He placed the sphere of the planets to be inclined to that of the stars
 3392 so that they all orbit at an angle inclined to the Earth's equator—on the
 3393 ecliptic.
- 3394 • Eudoxus (–390 to –340)
 - 3395 – He modeled each planet's motion as created by four spheres, with axes
 3396 inclined to one another to replicate retrograde motion and motion relative
 3397 to the stars. (The Sun and Moon only needed three spheres.)
 - 3398 – He modeled each planet's model as separate from the others and he did
 3399 not propose a whole solar system, just pieces.
 - 3400 – Callipus added spheres for some of the planets in order to slightly tune
 3401 some of the motions to better match observation.
 - 3402 – He apparently created one of the first published star catalogues, memori-
 3403 alized in the poem by Aratus, *Phaenomena*.
- 3404 • Aristotle (–384 to –322):
 - 3405 – He adopted Eudoxus and Callipus' approach in order to model all of the
 3406 planets by piecing together the Eudoxian sets of spheres, one inside of
 3407 the other from Saturn to the Moon.
 - 3408 – Since each is tied to the one beneath, Aristotle felt that additional spheres
 3409 were needed in order to isolate the motions of the planets from one
 3410 another. These were the rewinding spheres.
 - 3411 – He insisted that the volume outside of the orbit of the Moon was made
 3412 of a different element from the four elements that operated within. That
 3413 fifth element, the aether, filled the remaining volume to the outer stars,

- 3414 providing the material of the heavenly bodies. Natural motion in the
 3415 aether is perfectly circular.
- 3416 – He originated the idea that the universe was “full” of the aether—no
 3417 gaps or emptiness. This demand became necessary in all future Greek
 3418 cosmologies.
 - 3419 – Aristotle’s physics guided (or handcuffed) speculation about any motion
 3420 that the Earth might have had. The Earth had to be in the center of the
 3421 universe, not spinning, nor orbiting any point.
 - 3422 – He was very critical of the Pythagorean idea of an orbiting Earth for
 3423 (his) physics reasons, but also because there was no apparent parallax
 3424 which meant that the stars were so far away as to hide parallax (too far
 3425 for anyone’s taste) or that the Earth was stationary.

3426 Modeling of this sort stopped after Aristotle as there were problems with any model
 3427 in which the planets orbit in perfect circles with their common center on the Earth:

- 3428 • The seasons would all have the same durations, but everyone knew that was
 3429 not the case.
- 3430 • The brightness of the planets would not change, but everyone knew that was
 3431 not the case.
- 3432 • The ordering of the planets was arbitrary.

3433 3.6 A Little Bit of Hellenistic Astronomy

3434 Euclid • Aristarchus • Eratosthenes • Archimedes • Apollonius • Hipparchus • Ptolemy
 3435 (Set the context with the timeline in Figure ?? on page ??.)

3436 There were two basic thrusts after the fanciful modeling of Plato, Eudoxus, Callip-
 3437 pus, and Aristotle. Hellenistic astronomy became both observationally intense—
 3438 data collection became sophisticated— and mathematically sophisticated, culmi-
 3439 nating with Claudius Ptolemy’s enduring model in the second century, CE. Let’s
 3440 unwrap this extraordinary period of Alexandrian astronomy and set the stage for
 3441 1500 years of surprisingly authoritarian science.

3442 3.6.1 A Moving Earth

3443 **Heraclides of Pontus** (–387 to –312), from the southern coast of the Black Sea,
 3444 was a contemporary of Plato and Aristotle. As the son in a wealthy family and an
 3445 apparently smart young man, was able to emigrate to Athens where he became
 3446 a favorite student of Plato’s and was put in charge of the Academy when Plato
 3447 went on his last, ill-fated trip to Syracuse. He also studied with Aristotle (who
 3448 was 10 years his senior) and the Pythagoreans in Athens, so he was fully rounded
 3449 in the three major pillars of classical Greek philosophy. Plato died in –348 and

3450 his successor, Speusippus, died in –339 and when Heraclides lost the election for
3451 the next leader, he returned north to Pontus. That’s where he probably did his
3452 astronomy where he had two good ideas, neither of which went anywhere for 2000
3453 years.

3454 It should have bothered Aristotle that his model required the outside starry sphere
3455 to be rotating at an astonishing rate in order to make it all the way around each day.
3456 The obvious alternative was a spinning Earth and stationary stars and Heraclides
3457 proposed just that.

3458 His other imaginative idea addressed a second interesting fact: Mercury and Venus
3459 have a different relationship to the Sun from all of the other heavenly bodies. They
3460 seem to cling to it, appearing and disappearing as the Sun rises and sets. It was
3461 Heraclides who first suggested that this special relationship could be explained
3462 by making those two inner planets satellites of the Sun. His cosmology was that
3463 the Earth is at the center of the universe, spinning on its axis, orbited by Sun as
3464 “normal,” but the Sun in turn was itself a second center of rotation with Mercury
3465 and Venus orbiting it. Aristotle’s grip was not universal, even in his own time.

3466 3.6.1.1 The Greek Copernicus

3467 While Heraclides could be thought of as ushering in the post-Athens, Hellenic
3468 era, it was **Aristarchus of Samos** (–210 to –230), a toddler when Heraclides died,
3469 who conceived the best model of the universe and a completely new way to deal
3470 with the cosmos: by measuring it. He studied with Strato of Lampsacus, who was
3471 the third director of Aristotle’s Lyceum, and when Strato went to Alexandria to
3472 tutor and counsel Ptolemy II he brought Aristarchus along as his pupil. Strato
3473 returned to Athens, but Aristarchus stayed in Alexandria and did his mathematics
3474 and astronomy in that growing Greek-Egyptian intellectual center. He probably
3475 overlapped with the senior Euclid and surely learned all of Greek mathematics
3476 known to that time, conceivably from its most famous chronicler. He fashioned his
3477 single surviving text *On the Sizes and Distances of the Sun and the Moon* like Euclid’s
3478 *Elements*: propositions followed by orderly proofs.

3479 As the Moon orbits the Earth half of it is always illuminated, but we see phases as it
3480 makes its way around us. From our modern understanding, Figure ?? (a) shows the
3481 named phase states as we see them. When it’s on the other side of the Earth from
3482 the Sun and we’re in nighttime, we see it fully illuminated (“full Moon”). When
3483 it’s between us and the Sun (“new Moon”) we don’t see it at night (after all, we’re
3484 looking away from the Sun at night), but can sometimes see it during the day. In
3485 between, it shows us partially illuminated crescents. But look at the two quarter
3486 Moons. From Earth, at exactly that point we see the Moon split into two equal
3487 halves, one dark and one bright.

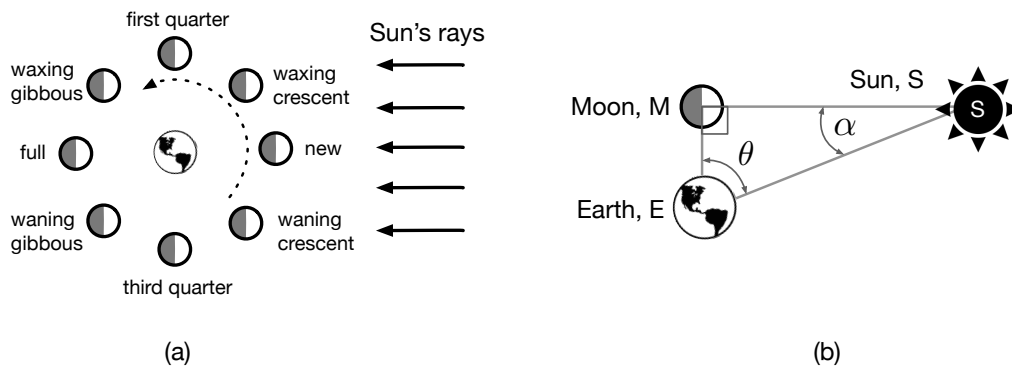


Figure 3.15: The Moons phases and positions are shown in (a) relative to the Earth and Sun. From this vantage point, the Moon orbits counterclockwise. In (b) the particular position and phase that makes the Aristarchus calculation possible with the right angle shown occurring at just the first or third quarter when the Moon is half lit.

3488 While Aristarchus didn't anticipate the Moon orbiting the Earth, he did realize that
 3489 this quarter phase had a particular geometric arrangement with respect to the Sun
 3490 and Figure ?? (b) shows his idea. At that moment, the angle between the Sun and
 3491 the Earth is a right angle, $\angle EMS = 90^\circ$.

3492 "...when the Moon appears to us halved, the great circle which divides the dark and
 3493 the bright portions of the Moon is in the direction of our eye...when the Moon appears
 3494 to us halved, its distance from the Sun is less than a quadrant by one-thirtieth of a
 3495 quadrant." Aristarchus, *On the Sizes and Distances of the Sun and the Moon*.

By "distance from the Sun" he means angle α in the diagram, $\angle MSE$. With a modest amount of modern trigonometry, it's possible from the angles to calculate the ratio of the distance of the Earth to the Sun to the distance of the Earth to the Moon in one line. Without modern trigonometry it's a straightforward exercise in geometry. Aristarchus did just that and found:

$$\frac{\text{Distance, Earth to Sun}}{\text{Distance, Earth to Moon}} = 19 - 20$$

3496 where the range is his own estimate of how well he could determine the angle.
 3497 Appendix ?? completes this calculation and some other interesting measurements
 3498 that he and others made. This are stunning in their originality and also in their sim-
 3499 plicity. He also subsequently calculated three additional things about the universe,
 3500 for a total of four groundbreaking conclusions:

- 3501 1. the distance of the Earth to the Sun) $\approx 20 \times$ distance of the Earth to the Moon
- 3502 2. the diameter of the Sun $\approx 19 \times$ the diameter of the Moon
- 3503 3. the diameter of the Earth $\approx 2.85 \times$ the diameter of the Moon
- 3504 4. the distance of the Earth to the Moon $\approx 10 \times$ the diameter of the Earth

3505 His mathematics and methods are correct but he had some mistakes, crucially be-
 3506 cause α is very hard to measure and so his determination of $\theta = 87^\circ$ was wrong...it's
 3507 actually closer to 89.853° which makes the distance of the Earth to the Sun) $\approx 390 \times$
 3508 distance of the Earth to the Moon.¹⁶

3509 But that's not all. Let's let Aristarchus' Italian/Greek contemporary **Archimedes of**
 3510 **Syracuse** (–287 to –312) take over from here:

3511 "Aristarchus has brought out a book consisting of certain hypotheses, wherein it
 3512 appears, as a consequence of the assumptions made, that the universe is many times
 3513 greater than the "universe" [expected]...**His hypotheses are that the fixed stars and**
 3514 **the sun remain unmoved, that the earth revolves about the sun on the circumference**
 3515 **of a circle, the sun lying in the middle of the orbit,** and that the sphere of fixed stars,
 3516 situated about the same centre as the sun, is so great that the circle in which he
 3517 supposes the earth to revolve bears such a proportion to the distance of the fixed stars
 3518 as the centre of the sphere bears to its surface." (emphasis, mine) Archimedes, *The*
 3519 *Sand-Reckoner*.

3520 Aristarchus was apparently the first to envision a Sun-centered ("heliocentric")
 3521 universe and, oh by the way he also apparently adopted Heraclides' notion of
 3522 a spinning Earth. Copernicus-in-training. Nobody knows how he came to this
 3523 conclusion...even though it solves many of the problems (planets' brightness, for
 3524 example). His model was largely ignored and the fact that Archimedes tossed that
 3525 reference off so casually is indicative of what must have been an overwhelming
 3526 concern for the parallax problem (which is a prejudice about the possible enormity
 3527 of the universe) and Aristotle's authority when it came to terrestrial physics.

3528 But there it is: the first modern-sounding MOTION BY THE EARTH and MOTION IN
 3529 THE HEAVENS . Copernicus later took comfort in Aristarchus' idea.

3530 **This is an auspicious moment!** Aristarchus' work ushers in the beginning of
 3531 quantitative astronomy which was quickly taken up by his contemporary, **Eratos-**
 3532 **thenes** (–276 to –194), who became the Chief Librarian of the Alexandria Library
 3533 just following Aristarchus' death. (He was also a geographer, mathematician, as-
 3534 tronomer, and a poet. The nickname given to him was Pentathlos, implying a Greek
 3535 pentathlon athlete of many talents.) With his access to Library data, Eratosthenes
 3536 learned that at noon on the summer solstice (the first day of summer) in Syene,
 3537 Egypt, the Sun's rays were known go right into a vertical well without hitting the
 3538 sides. Syene (modern day Aswan) has a latitude of just about 24° which is at the
 3539 northern tropic, the Tropic of Cancer which means at the Summer Solstice, the sun

¹⁶The point of First Quarter would be in the same part of the sky as the Sun, just before Sunset. Without modern tools, measuring that angle would essentially impossible, if not dangerous! **evans1998** suggests that Aristarchus concocted the "one-thirtieth" as an extrapolation of the time that it takes for the Moon to reach the First Quarter as the largest angle that could come from a month of 30 days to orbit and one quarter of that for the phase. That's almost even more impressive reasoning.

3540 is directly overhead (the definition of the Tropic of Cancer) and so would not cast a
 3541 shadow from a vertical stick in the ground. Meanwhile, Alexandria is directly north
 3542 of Syene at the same longitude and so Eratosthenes reasoned that the Sun is so far
 3543 away that it's okay to presume that its rays were parallel at both cities. Therefore,
 3544 for a spherical Earth, the shadow of the Sun on a vertical stick in Alexandria would
 3545 cast a shadow. He measured it rather than the 0° at Syene, it was 7.2° at Alexandria.
 3546 That angle is $1/50$ th of the 360° of a circle so that the circumference of the Earth must
 3547 be 50 times the distance between the two cities, which is 833 km (in modern units).
 3548 Fifty times 833 km is 42,000 km for Earth's circumference— only a few percent
 3549 higher than a more modern value! Appendix ?? shows this calculation.

3550 Eratosthenes wasn't done. He also devised a way to measure the obliquity of the
 3551 ecliptic—that angle 23.5° of inclination of the ecliptic from the Celestial Equator.
 3552 And he made a star catalog of 650 stars. And he wrote a poem about himself. He
 3553 reportedly went blind in his old age and chose to commit suicide as a result.

3554 So for the first time, astronomers learned the size of the Earth and more could be
 3555 learned: for example, using Aristarchus and Eratosthenes's results, from Aristarchus'
 3556 #3 above they could conclude that the diameter of the Moon is 4700 km, where the
 3557 actual value is about 3500 km.

▷ I hope you can appreciate that Greek astronomers are no longer merely
 telling stories. They're measuring our universe.

3558 3.6.2 Casting Aside Aristotle and Eudoxus

3559 The next important step is another storyteller, but an important mathematician who
 3560 had a good idea. **Apollonius of Perga** (–240 to –190) migrated from Turkey to
 3561 Alexandria as a young man to study in the successor school of Euclid. “The Great
 3562 Geometer” became his historical label and he's remembered for discovering the
 3563 mathematics of “conic sections” (circles, parabolas, ellipses, and hyperbolas)—a
 3564 subject beyond Euclid's geometry.

3565 For our story we know of him as the geometer who puzzled over the seasons
 3566 problem and found a way to modify the Eudoxian model to loosen the requirement
 3567 of all spheres centered on the Earth. His discovery is shown in Figure ?? (a) in
 3568 which E shows the location of the Earth, S is the location of the orbiting Sun, and
 3569 D is a point in space—attached to no object— which is displaced from E. The
 3570 distance $\overline{EC} = e$ is called the **eccentricity**. The Sun uniformly follows the dashed
 3571 **eccentric circle**, centered on D and not the Earth! Notice that the result is a Sun's
 3572 path sometimes further from, and sometimes closer to the Earth. When it's further,
 3573 it would take longer to go halfway around and so the seasons during that path
 3574 segment would be longer.

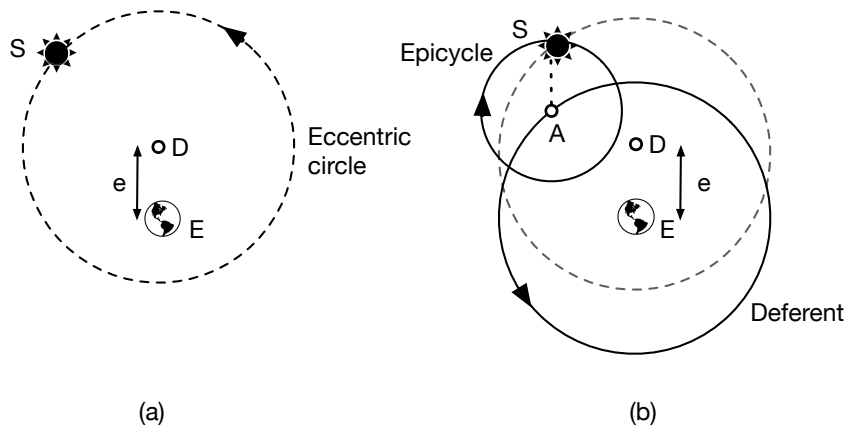


Figure 3.16: In both figures, E is the location of the Earth and S is the location of the Sun. In (a) an eccentric circle is shown for a proposed Sun orbit around the Earth. By putting the center at a spot in space displaced from the Earth by the eccentric, e , the seasons would appear on Earth to be of different durations. In (b) the equivalent (under the conditions described in the text) epicycle solution is shown with an overlay of the eccentric circle shown in a light dashed line for comparison. The deferent is centered on the Earth and the epicycle is centered on the rim of the deferent.

3575 But there's more to this as Apollonius discovered a geometric equivalence also
 3576 illustrated in Figure ?? (b). Here a circle, called the **deferent** is centered on the Earth
 3577 but doesn't act as an orbital path for the Sun. Rather, the Sun rides on another
 3578 circle, the clockwise rotating **epicycle** with its center (A) attached to the rim of
 3579 the counterclockwise, rotating deferent. Notice that the rotational sense (here,
 3580 clockwise) of the epicycle is opposite to that of the orbit of its center, A, on the
 3581 deferent. Each of these models would cause Earth to experience more Sun during
 3582 part of the year and less Sun the other parts, which would change the length of the
 3583 seasons.

The idea of an epicycle is not easy to grasp since we don't use them any more in
 planetary astronomy. But if you look up some night, you'll see an example of an
 epicycle. Think modern (for a moment): we know that the Earth goes around the Sun
 and that the Moon goes around the Earth. The Moon's orbit can be thought of as
 3584 an epicycle: the Earth's (nearly) circular orbit around the Sun would be the deferent
 and the Moon's orbit around the Earth is the epicycle. So looked at from the Sun,
 the Moon's orbit would be a slightly off-center orbit around the (orbiting) Earth. This
 particular epicycle is one in which in Figure ?? (b), E coincides with D. We're going to
 meet epicycles in a major way when we get to Ptolemy and Copernicus.
 3585

3586 Numerical predictions were not the goal for Apollonius, but a more realistic frame-
 3587 work was—and probably the geometry was also an attraction for him. So his ideas
 3588 were one more step away from Aristotle toward a new way of doing science.

3.6.3 The Greatest Astronomer: Hipparchus

The most celebrated astronomer of antiquity was, yet another Greek about whom we don't have many biographical details. However, **Hipparchus of Nicea** (about –190 to about –120) was so accomplished that his feats were detailed in later Hellenistic astronomy texts and most completely two centuries later by Ptolemy. His mature astronomy work appears to have been done on the island of Rhodes a large island to the west of Cyprus and far from his home near Constantinople. There he built an observatory and created or improved on instruments for measuring positions of stars and planets. He was a serious observer of astronomical objects and events and a mathematician of significance. Finally, the world was ready for a complete astronomer...The Greatest Astronomer, he was later called.

Let's be clear: **astronomy was different after Hipparchus**. He dedicated himself to an entirely different purpose from the "picture-stories" of Plato and Aristotle. Hipparchus measured numerical features of the cosmos.

Hipparchus' Solar Model. Hipparchus figured out that if he used the eccentric model only a few parameters were required in order to determine, e and so the problem of the seasons' unequal durations could be solved geometrically, almost like being a cosmic surveyor. His model is shown in Figure ?? with the anchor for astronomical positioning, the Vernal Equinox (VE, ♈) (a convention used to this day). The Sun (☉) orbits the center of the eccentric orbit at C and the Earth is displaced by the eccentricity, e (which is usually quoted as the fraction of the distance \overline{CE} to the radius, \overline{CA}). The dash-dot lines denote the axis from the Vernal Equinox (mid-March) and the Autumnal Equinox (AE, mid-September) and the Summer Solstice (SS, mid-June) and the Winter Solstice (WS, mid-December) and the four unequal quadrants delineate the four seasons. Here it's drawn for antiquity in which spring was the longest season and autumn was the shortest (while in our time summer is longest and winter is shortest). In astronomy, the furthest point of a celestial object's orbit from a reference is called the "**apogee**" and the closest approach, the "**perigee**." The figure shows the arrangement for antiquity, when the angle of the dotted line through E and C was about $\alpha = 65^\circ$. Today, it's greater than 90° which is why our summers are longer than antiquity's summers.

His result was that the eccentric is displaced from the Earth by about 1/24th (about 0.04) of its orbital radius so it's almost a circle centered on Earth, which is why the season durations are within a few days of one another.¹⁷ Notice that our summer and spring is when the Sun is at apogee and fall and winter are at perigee.¹⁸

¹⁷Had $e = 0$, then all four seasons would have been the same length and the Sun's orbit would have been Aristotle-like, centered on the Earth.

¹⁸Why the Sun is *furthest* away during the summer is a reasonable question and understanding that waited for Kepler and Newton.

3624 Hipparchus could use his solar model to predict the location of the Sun at any time
3625 in the future and it was accurate and used for many hundreds of years.

3626 **Hipparchus' Lunar Model.** The
3627 Moon's motion is different and more
3628 complicated than the Sun's with at least
3629 three parameters required to determine
3630 its motion. He managed that as well,
3631 this time using an epicycle model. Fi-
3632 nally that legend ascribed to Thales
3633 from 400 years before is made whole:
3634 Hipparchus could predict both solar
3635 and lunar eclipses!

3636 In addition to his modeling of the
3637 Moon's motion, he found a way to de-
3638 termine the distance from the Earth to
3639 the Moon. With his version of trigonom-
3640 etry (see below), he found that the dis-
3641 tance from the Earth to the Moon is 65.5
3642 times the radius of the Earth and that's
3643 about right (it's about 60.336). (New-
3644 ton used his result in his invention of
3645 his Law of Gravitation.) Hipparchus at-
3646 tempted the same thing for the distance
3647 to the Sun, but underestimated it by a
3648 factor of 50.

3649 **Hipparchus' Fixed Star catalog.** Hip-
3650 parchus began the first quantitative sur-
3651 vey of the fixed stars—the ones thought
3652 to be on the inside of the Celestial Sphere. Prior to him, locations of bright stars
3653 were noted by identifying a rough relative position in words: that a the star in
3654 the "shoulder" of one in one constellation is rising when the star in the "sword"
3655 of another constellation is setting and that the star on the "right leg" of a third
3656 constellation appears right overhead when this happens. More stories. Hipparchus
3657 took a different approach.

3658 His data were extensive and would have required impressive patience (night after
3659 night) and commitment to a multi-year research project. Ptolemy tells us that
3660 Hipparchus cataloged around 850 stars, their positions, and their brightnesses and
3661 they were in use for centuries afterwards. Others had made catalogs (Eudoxus and
3662 Eratosthenes), but his was different: he invented a coordinate system and assigned

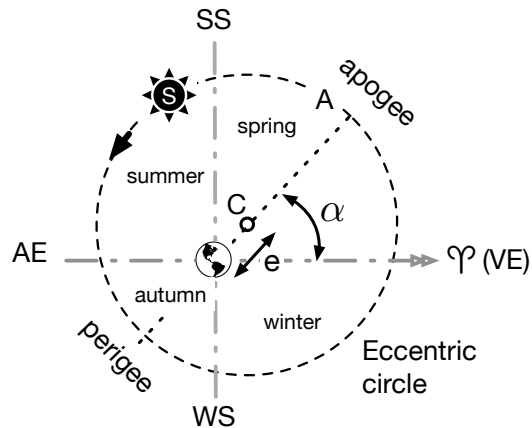


Figure 3.17: Hipparchus and Ptolemy's solar model showing the seasons in antiquity (today, winter is shorter and summer is longer). SS and WS are the Summer and Winter Solstices, VE (Υ) and AE are the Vernal and Autumnal Equinoxes and the seasons are then defined as the four quadrants among them. The Earth (\oplus) is displaced from the Sun (\odot) by the eccentricity, e , the distance in space from Earth to the center of the eccentric circle about which the Sun orbits. The dotted line is described in the text.

3663 positional numbers to each star. Think about how your GPS specifies a location
 3664 on the Earth: my phone tells me that the location of the Library of Alexandria
 3665 is 31.20870° N, 29.90911° E. What that tells me is that the library is a little more
 3666 than 31° north of the equator (the **latitude**) and about 30° east of some point that's
 3667 world-wide agreed to be the observatory at Greenwich, England (the **longitude**).
 3668 Hipparchus adopted the same thing, but applied to the stars—the underside, if
 3669 you will, of that Celestial Sphere above us. (More about this and how his system is
 3670 essentially identical to modern astronomy is discussed in *Greek Astronomy, Today* in
 3671 Section ??.

3672 A many-decade detective story unfolded in trying to figure out which (if any) of
 3673 Hipparchus' data were included in Ptolemy's more extensive star catalog. And
 3674 there's a clue. Remember Aratus' poem, *Phaenomena* from Figure ?? which was writ-
 3675 ten as an ode to Eudoxus? The one book we have of Hipparchus' is his *Commentary*
 3676 *on the Phaenomena of Eudoxus and Aratus* in which he severely criticized mistakes of
 3677 fact in the poem regarding the relative positions of stars in the constellations. He
 3678 included a set of positions for 22 stars of his own observation and these have been
 3679 extensively compared with Ptolemy's catalog and the agreement is pretty good.
 3680 Without that poem, and Hipparchus' grumpiness about a 200 year old poem,¹⁹ we
 3681 wouldn't have any corroborating information that Hipparchus really did create the
 3682 first ever quantitative star catalog. Well, maybe until 2022! For that breaking story,
 3683 look at *Greek Astronomy, Today* in Section ??.

3684 **Hipparchus' Trigonometry.** The mathematical prob-
 3685 lems he had to solve for his solar and lunar models were
 3686 surely the inspiration for a tool that marks the inven-
 3687 tion of trigonometry. Figure ?? shows his idea. A chord
 3688 inside of a circle with radius R and center O is shown
 3689 as the length \overline{AB} where the chord subtends the angle θ .
 3690 By hand Hipparchus divided carefully drafted circles
 3691 into degrees based on 360° (which came from the Baby-
 3692 lonians), but much finer: 21,600 segments which is the
 3693 number of arc minutes in 360° . Then he painstakingly
 3694 created "tables of chords" of varying lengths for each
 3695 segment giving him a fairly precise lookup table of angles,
 3696 radii, and chords. Given a radius, and the length of
 3697 a cord, an angle could be looked up in the table. Or *visa*
 3698 *versa*. It's equivalent to a table of trigonometric sines
 3699 since as in the figure, if one divides the chord in two so that there are two right
 3700 angles at point C , then the $\sin(\frac{\theta}{2}) = \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\overline{AB}}{R} \right)$.

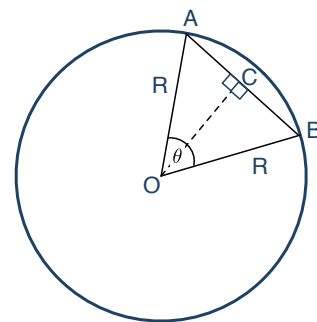


Figure 3.18: Showing how ancient "chords" related to a modern sin for a given angle θ .

¹⁹He wrote other ill-tempered reviews of other people's writings.

3701 **Hipparchus' Discovery of the Precession of the Equinoxes.**

3702 The discovery for which he's most known was that the Earth's seasons might shift
 3703 over time. He found this in two, complimentary ways. His first approach suggested
 3704 the location against the zodiac of the summer solstice was 12 hours different from
 3705 that recorded by Aristarchus, 145 years before. That inspired him to make a second,
 3706 clever measurement to confirm that odd result.

3707 He figured out how to determine the longitude of a star (the angular distance of the
 3708 star relative to the Vernal Equinox) near the ecliptic and compare that to an earlier
 3709 measurement from other astronomers. He focused on the bright star, Spica (the
 3710 brightest in the constellation Virgo, or α Virginis) for which he had data from an
 3711 Alexandrian astronomer, Timocharis in -294 and -283 almost two centuries before
 3712 him. This could be done easily in principle. Just measure the angle between the Sun
 3713 and the star, right? That is:

$$\text{Longitude, Spica} = (\text{longitude, Sun}) + (\text{arc-angle between Spica-Sun}).$$

3714 He knew the longitude of the Sun from his Solar model which gave him the angle α
 3715 from Figure ???. The arc-angle in longitude of Spica and the Sun is a different story
 3716 since if the Sun is out, that's daytime (!) and so you can't see the star. But he was
 3717 very clever. He made use of the fact that during a lunar eclipse, the Earth is directly
 3718 between the Moon and the Sun...so they are 180° apart and at night, he would be
 3719 looking away from the Sun, toward Spica. So measuring the arc of longitude of
 3720 Spica relative to the eclipsed Moon gives him his answer:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Longitude, Spica} = & (\text{longitude, Sun}) + (\text{arc-angle between Spica-Moon}) \\ & + (\text{arc-angle between Sun-Moon}). \end{aligned}$$

3721 At an eclipse, the (arc-angle between Sun-Moon) is 180° ! Using Timocharis' Spica-
 3722 Moon measurement, the longitudinal difference of Spica was 8° west of the Au-
 3723 tumnal Equinox while he determined 6° : the longitude of Spica had increased by
 3724 2° in 150 years. (He actually did this as an average of two different eclipses 11
 3725 years apart.) That's about 1° per 75 years (consistent with his other measurement).
 3726 Ptolemy did a similar experiment 265 years later and compared it with Hipparchus'
 3727 and got about 1° per 100 years.

3728 So what's going on here? Hipparchus concluded that the zero-point of longitude
 3729 (the Vernal Equinox, which is where the ecliptic crosses the Celestial Equator) must
 3730 be moving somehow over very long times.

3731 This we know now has a physical cause: the Earth's axis of rotation points at an
 3732 angle that's not perpendicular to the plane of its orbit around the Sun. It's tilted

3733 by close to that 23.5° from Figure ?? and like a top, the mass of the Earth causes it
 3734 to precess around the Celestial Pole. This wobble of the Earth *looks* like a wobble
 3735 of the ecliptic and so the equinoxes will be in a different location as time marches
 3736 on. How fast? We know now the precession rate is pretty close to Hipparchus'
 3737 and Ptolemy's measurements: about 1° per 72 years. So to go all the way around,
 3738 requires $72 \times 360^\circ = 25,920$ years.

3739 3.6.4 Summary of the Astronomy of Aristarchus, Eratosthenes, Apollonius, 3740 and Hipparchus

3741 (Set the context with the timeline in Figure ?? on page ??.)

- 3742 • Aristarchus (−310 to −230):
 - 3743 – He made the first attempts to use geometry to measure distances among
 - 3744 and sizes of the Earth, Moon, and Sun.
 - 3745 – He proposed the first model of a Sun-centered cosmology, apparently
 - 3746 without geometrical modeling.
- 3747 • Eratosthenes (−276 to −194):
 - 3748 – He measured the diameter of the Earth to impressive accuracy.
 - 3749 – He measured the obliquity of the ecliptic—that 23.5° tilt of the ecliptic
 - 3750 from the celestial equator.
 - 3751 – He apparently created a star catalog of more than 600 stars. This would
 - 3752 have been in words itemizing apparent locations of stars relative to
 - 3753 constellation points.
- 3754 • Apollonius (−240 to −190):
 - 3755 – He was mathematician of the first rank and found a picture-way to model
 - 3756 the Sun's motion around the Earth to create seasons of different lengths
 - 3757 through the introduction of the deferent and eccentricity.
 - 3758 – He also found a mathematically identical, but geometrically different
 - 3759 form for planetary motion called epicycles. His proof of their equivalence
 - 3760 was lauded as an important step by Ptolemy.
- 3761 • Hipparchus (−190 to −120):
 - 3762 – He built on Apollonius' deferent model and found a way to measure
 - 3763 the actual eccentricity of the Sun's orbit and the longitude of the apogee.
 - 3764 This was the first attempt to not only geometrically model the cosmos (or
 - 3765 any physical mechanism) but to also quantitatively measure the shape
 - 3766 parameters of the model.
 - 3767 – He found a way to determine the distance to the Moon in terms of Earth
 - 3768 radii, a value used by Newton much later.
 - 3769 – His star catalog of more than 800 entries went beyond the stories that
 - 3770 had been told previously: he invented a coordinate system that could be
 - 3771 used by anyone to find the actual numerical positions of objects relative

- 3772 to an “origin” of essentially a celestial longitude and latitude.
- 3773 – He discovered that the Earth’s seasons shift relative to the star’s posi-
- 3774 tions over time—the precession of the equinoxes. Understanding the
- 3775 physical cause of this phenomenon waited for Newton’s explanation of
- 3776 the precession of the Earth’s axis of rotation...slowly: about 1° per 75
- 3777 years.

3778 3.7 The End of Greek Astronomy: Ptolemy

3779 While Aristotle’s concentric spheres model lay dormant, it was to rise again in the

3780 middle ages and assume a strange parallel existence next to the model that made

3781 precise predictions. This is the model of Claudius Ptolemaeus, known for nearly two

3782 millennia as **Ptolemy of Alexandria** (100 to 170 CE). He created the most complete

3783 model of the cosmos before Copernicus and, refreshingly, his books survived intact

3784 thanks to Arab intellectuals’ commitment to preserving and commenting on the

3785 works that they encountered from the Islamic conquest of the Near East, all of

3786 Northern Africa, and Spain.

3787 Ptolemy wrote three books on astronomy for which we have original Greek and

3788 some Arabic translations. *Mathematical Composition* is the main work, now known

3789 by its Arabic title of *Almagest*, a corruption of the Arabic *Al* with the Greek word

3790 *megistē*, for “the greatest.” The second is the *Handy Tables* which consists of two parts:

3791 the second part includes tables of his planets and stars of which we know from

3792 medieval versions 200 years after Ptolemy’s life. The first part is the instruction

3793 manual on how to use the tables, surviving only in its Greek origin. *Almagest* is

3794 too complicated to have been absorbed by most and so the *Handy Tables* assured

3795 widespread use of Ptolemy’s work. The third, *Planetary Hypotheses*, is an upgrade

3796 of the earlier *Almagest* and an attempt to build a plausible physical model of the

3797 purely mathematical *Almagest*. It was only appreciated and fully translated as two

3798 books in the 1960s!

3799 Even though we finally have a complete set of one of our astronomer’s works,

3800 ironically we know little about his life, except for a few references of his and a few

3801 later narratives by Roman and medieval scholars. Ptolemy almost certainly worked

3802 in Alexandria as his extensive observations come from that latitude. He’s the first of

3803 our Greeks to have two names! “Claudius” indicates that he was a Roman citizen,

3804 probably during the time of Emperors Hadrian to Marcus Aurelius. “Ptolemaeus”

3805 indicates that his was of Greek ancestry.

3806 *Almagest* is a huge subject. It is 700 pages long in a modern edition and more than a

3807 thousand pages are required to fully lay out the considerable mathematics of the

3808 book ([swordlow84](#)). It’s not for the faint of heart. It’s also pure mathematics and

3809 little philosophy and *not a physical model*.

3810 Here's what it's like. I could imagine building a mechanical model of the economics
 3811 principle of supply and demand. Suppose we have a playground teeter-totter with
 3812 an arrow on the right end that points to a dial indicating high or low for prices
 3813 of goods. Right side up, prices high, right side down, prices are low. If we start
 3814 with the teeter-totter level and add weights to the right to represent *supply* of that
 3815 product and weights to the left to represent *demand* for that product...we've got a
 3816 mechanical model of the economy. When the supply, right-weight is larger than the
 3817 left demand-weight, the arrow points down—prices fall. Likewise, when demand
 3818 outweighs (sorry) supply, then the left side goes down and the arrow points up for
 3819 higher prices.

3820 This is a perfectly predictable model of the economy and through careful analysis of
 3821 past economic history, one could tune the amounts of weight that would correspond
 3822 to a prediction of prices and mark the dial with \$ indicators. But, while it's a good
 3823 model, *it's not a realistic representation of the economy*. *Almagest* is like that. It's a very
 3824 complicated model of moving and spinning circles, lots of numbers to characterize
 3825 the circles, scores of huge tables of numbers,²⁰ and could accurately predict positions
 3826 of the heavenly bodies. But Ptolemy made no claim that the Sun, Moon, and planets
 3827 actually performed the motions in his model.

3828 **Ptolemy's Philosophical Roots and Prerequisites for the Book: Books I and II** of
 3829 *Almagest* describe his working philosophy, defending it with standard arguments.
 3830 But apart from the actual heavenly body motions, it's Aristotle, top to bottom. The
 3831 mathematics required was Euclidean plane geometry and the use of Hipparchus'
 3832 chord tables, except Ptolemy made them even more precise. He used the new
 3833 "spherical geometry," and he developed it from scratch for the reader. With this
 3834 introduction, he's ready to solve the world.

3835 **Ptolemy's Solar Model: Book III** This was relatively easy and critically important.
 3836 All of positional astronomy—to this day— depends on understanding where objects
 3837 in the sky are relative to the Vernal Equinox, which in turn depends on the Sun's
 3838 motion and position at any time. He didn't invent a solar model—he replicated
 3839 Hipparchus' and was generous with his praise the original author.²¹ So, Ptolemy's
 3840 model of the Sun's is exactly the same: Figure ???. He repeated Hipparchus' deter-
 3841 mination of the eccentricity and agreed, but with higher precision: $e = 0.0415$ as
 3842 compared with Hipparchus' $e = 0.04$.

3843 **Ptolemy's Lunar Model: Book IV and V.** The motion of the Moon is difficult to
 3844 grasp even today. Ptolemy's solution was ugly and also his biggest mistake: he

²⁰Perhaps the first use of tables in any manuscript in history.

²¹He has been accused of plagiarizing Hipparchus, but that's not fair as he gave ample credit.

3845 could solve for eclipses (lunar and solar), but his model predicts that the Moon's
3846 apparent size would vary by a factor of two in a month, which obviously isn't
3847 the case. His solution is tortured and from our modern perspective, clearly an
3848 indication that there must have been something wrong. One has the impression
3849 of him just giving up and declaring successful eclipse predictions as a victory. He
3850 made careful tables of predictions of the eclipses—which were accurate—for any
3851 date, and washed his hands of the Moon problem.

3852 **Ptolemy's Model Fixed Star Catalog: Books VII and VIII.** It was Ptolemy who
3853 told us of Hipparchus' catalog of the positions of 850 stars. He takes on the same
3854 task, but also includes the positions and apparent star brightness of 1022 objects
3855 from 48 constellations in his catalog and with this began almost two centuries of
3856 fights among historians. Did Ptolemy copy Hipparchus' 850 stars (shifting their
3857 longitudes by $2^{\circ}40'$ to correct for the precession of the equinox over 265 years) or
3858 did he measure their positions as he claimed? Or had Hipparchus' catalog been
3859 wrong? The comparison of the Hipparchus' 22 stars' from his *Commentary* to Aratus'
3860 poem with their counterparts in Ptolemy's catalog is the key. There are translations
3861 problems since Greek numbers were written using Greek letters and sometimes
3862 mistakes happened in translation and transcription of centuries-old media. Stars
3863 were not always named, but a little story was told about each one to locate it within
3864 a constellation. So mistakes happened. This argument has largely subsided: within
3865 the uncertainties that can reasonably be attributed to each, most of Hipparchus'
3866 22 stars do match their Ptolemaic counterparts and that each astronomer is likely
3867 vindicated. I'm sure you're glad that we've cleared that up.

3868 The bottom line about Ptolemy's catalog is this: it represented an enormous effort
3869 over probably decades and was the best star chart all the way to Tycho de Brahe in
3870 the late 16th century (Copernicus used much of it). A remarkable achievement and
3871 legacy.

3872 **Ptolemy's Planetary Theories: Books IX through XIV.** His planetary models (yes,
3873 there were three) were the target of the Muslim astronomers, Copernicus, Galileo,
3874 Tycho, Kepler, and Newton and it took all of them to bring Ptolemy down. Its
3875 accuracy is still impressive so something besides getting the right numbers was
3876 behind its downfall, an important part of our story later.

3877 The end product of his planetary research is a chapter for each of the five planets
3878 including its geometrical model, the particular parameters built into each model, a
3879 description of how he determined each parameter from his observations, and then
3880 five deliverables: a set of tables of positional coordinates for each planet, for any
3881 day in the future. It was these tables that were reprised in his User's Manual, the
3882 *Handy Tables*.

3883 He must have struggled mightily to make Aristotelean circular orbits work but
 3884 he held accuracy to a higher standard than the Classical Greeks, for whom a nice
 3885 picture-story was sufficient. In order to “get it right”—which meant, make predic-
 3886 tions that worked—required him to make excursions from some of Aristotelian
 3887 rules. For example, the eccentric model for the Sun and a strange epicyclic model of
 3888 the Moon had heavenly bodies orbiting seemingly arbitrary points in space apart
 3889 from the Earth! But as painful as the Moon solution was, getting the motions of the
 3890 planets right was another story altogether.

3891 3.7.1 Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn

3892 The prominent retrograde motion of especially Mars as well as Jupiter and Saturn
 3893 added an entirely different set of complications from the naive epicycle model of
 3894 Apollonius and Hipparchus. The simple epicycle picture of Figure ?? wouldn’t
 3895 do. Ptolemy had to insult Aristotle one more time and that particular solution
 3896 offended Copernicus and his Arab predecessors. Let’s look at his solution for the
 3897 outer planets as they’re a little simpler. Figure ?? shows his model that functions for
 3898 Mars, Jupiter, and Saturn. Look at Figure Box ?? on page ?? . After you’ve read the
 3899 material in that Box, return to this point ↩ and continue reading.

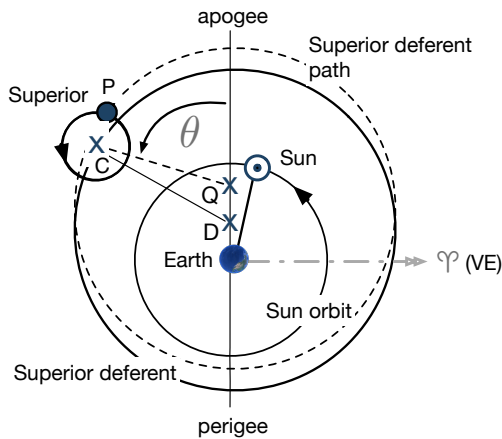
3900 The new wrinkle is the introduction of a third point in space, the **equant** (Q),
 3901 displaced from the deferent point by the same amount as D is from E. A superior
 3902 planet’s epicycle’s center P doesn’t undergo uniform circular motion about the
 3903 deferent center, D, *but about the equant, Q*. That is, the angle θ uniformly increases
 3904 in time around the epicycle’s path, so it appears to perform *non-uniform* rotation
 3905 around D (its center) *and non-uniform around Earth*. The model constrains this
 3906 movement such that the line from a superior planet to P, $\overline{\text{Superior-P}}$, is always
 3907 parallel to the line connecting the Earth and the Sun, $\overline{\text{Sun-Earth}}$. Notice that this
 3908 creates a special relationship among the Vernal Equinox, the Sun, and the planet.

3909 So a superior planet orbits in its epicycle with center (P) following its deferent as
 3910 originally imagined by Apollonius—except that as compared to Figure ?? the epicy-
 3911 cle rotation is reversed from counterclockwise to clockwise. *That creates retrograde*
 3912 *motion*. The Sun is shown with its orbit centered on the Earth (since its eccentric
 3913 center is too small to explicitly show). So there are two centers of motion here—one
 3914 for the Sun and another for Mars’ deferent.

3915 The dashed curve in the figure is the trajectory of Mars’ deferent. So what Ptolemy
 3916 knew was the various positions that Mars, Jupiter, or Saturn would have on the
 3917 *dashed line*, but what he needed in order to build each model was its position on the
 3918 deferent, the solid line. That’s a formidable mathematical transformation.

3919

FIGURE BOX ??



Ptolemy's model (not to scale) for a superior planet, Mars, Jupiter, or Saturn (P) and its relationship to the Sun (\odot). Here, "Superior" (\circ) is on an epicycle with its center at C. C rotates clockwise around the circular deferent path with its center at the center, D. The Earth is not at the center of anything, except close to that for the Sun! The angular speed of P around D — the amount that the angle θ increases with time is constant, but about the point Q...not D. The dashed circle is the path that P actually takes which its offset from the deferent's center.

Each planetary "kit" looks like this for superior planets and slightly different for the inferior planets. Every deferent radius for all

planets was chosen to be 60 in an arbitrary set of units. The necessary parameters were determined by Ptolemy separately for each planet, including: the epicycle radius, the separation of Earth from the deferent point (D), which is also the separation of D from the equant, Q, the orientation of the apogee to the Vernal Equinox direction, and the angular speed at which θ increases in time.

Now go back to page ?? and pick up where you left off.

3920 "...in a tour de force of possibly the most complex and extended calculation in all of
3921 ancient mathematics, he developed a method of successive approximation that allows
3922 the numerical values of the eccentricity and the direction of the apsidal [direction
3923 of the apogee of Mars' orbit] line to be found to any degree of accuracy. Both the
3924 problem and the solution are remarkable...his solution shows a very high order of
3925 mathematical intuition...The number of astronomers after Ptolemy who understood
3926 and could apply the method must have been very small." [swerdlow84, Vol 1, p307.]

3927 Let's pick on Mars. Mars orbits Earth (in our 20th century way of viewing things)
3928 about every 687 days, or 1.88 Earth years and undergoes retrograde motion about
3929 every 2.1 years, or a little more than one revolution around the Sun. The backwards
3930 appearance lasts a little more than two Earth months, or about 72 days. Ptolemy's
3931 model with the equant rather precisely describes Mars' retrograde motion as it
3932 forces a kind of loop-the-loop as viewed from Earth.

3933 In Figure ?? I've calculated the Mars model to show its epicycle and eccentricity
3934 (separation among Earth, D, and Q) using parameters taken from *Almagest*. Mars'

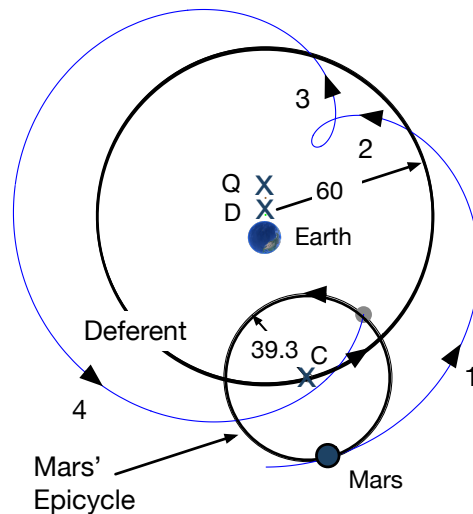


Figure 3.20: Mars (σ) is shown on its epicycle with its center, C, rotating around the deferent with its center at D. I've used Ptolemy's actual relative sizes for Mars. All deferents were in units of 60. Mars' epicycle's radius is $39.3/60$ and the distance from Q to Earth is $12/60$. One can see the strange loop motion described in the text.

3935 path is, well, unusual. There are 4 points identified on the actual path that Mars
 3936 takes while riding on its epicycle. We start at position 1, and as the epicycle turns
 3937 and as the deferent turns, Mars moves to position 2 where it starts to appear to slow
 3938 making that loop which makes it appear to go backwards during 72 nights. Then it
 3939 comes out of retrograde and continues its forward-appearing path at 3 and nearly
 3940 completing it's 1.8 year long path at 4. In each Mars year, the location of the loop
 3941 shifts a bit relative to the Vernal Equinox.

3942 This is what's seen from Earth with a bonus: it also addresses the fact that in
 3943 retrograde, the planets are brighter, here, because it would literally be closer to
 3944 Earth. Just how often and how fast would be determined by the parameters—Jupiter
 3945 and Saturn's parameters are quite different.

3946 It works very well as seen in Figure ?? from [evans1984](#) (inspired by [evans1998](#)).
 3947 This shows seven bands that should encompass the retrogrades of Mars as viewed
 3948 from Earth for some of the years of Ptolemy's observations, from 109–122 CE. The
 3949 loops are the Mars retrograde events relative to the Vernal Equinox (the trajectory
 3950 between points 2 and 3 in Figure ??) and the wedges show predictions of where that
 3951 should happen. In (a) predictions are for a straight epicycle model *without an equant*
 3952 while (b) shows the same thing, but *including the equant*. This, and other successful
 3953 measurements surely convinced Ptolemy that he was right. He needed the equant.

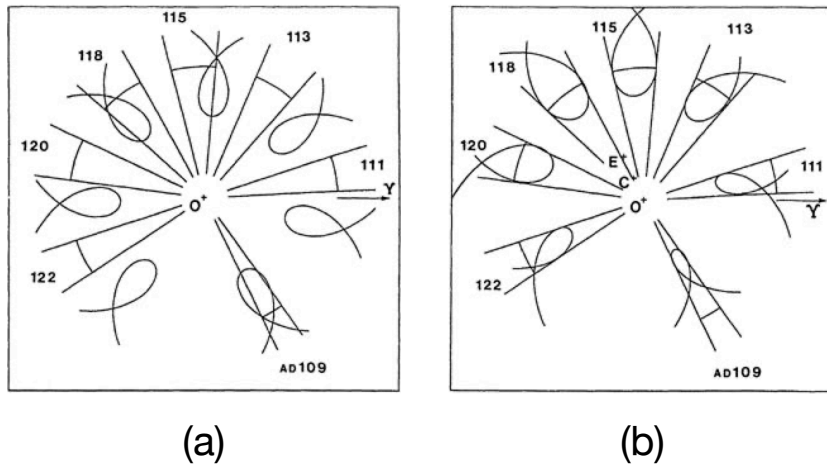


Figure 3.21: Seven retrograde loops of Mars for times of Ptolemy's observations (a) without the equant and (b) with the equant.

3954 The relationship that Mercury and Venus have with the Sun was very problematic. Today we know that they orbit very close to the Sun but even now measuring their positions is challenging. The Sun's in the way! Observations had to be done just after sunrise and just before sunset...and carefully as to not blind one's self. So they presented a set of problems which couldn't be solved without separate models for each. And those solutions are strange, especially for Mercury with more moving centers of deferents.

3955

3956 Think about all of the major ways in which Ptolemy has violated Aristotelian imperatives. Is Earth at the center now? Of what? The outer planets and the Sun no longer orbit around it symmetrically. They also don't orbit at constant speeds except now around an uninhabited point in space, not around the Earth. It's tortuously pieced together in ways that Aristotle could never have imagined—and that a modern physicist would not have tolerated. "Simplicity" is nice in physical models, not guaranteed, but when your model is so bizarre you'd tend to think that it's trying to tell you that the world is probably not that way. But this is the first time. Going from pictures and stories to numerical prediction surely meant that when predictions worked, then it must be some part of the truth. The late 16th century's Johannes Kepler is from whom we learn the real solar system model and we'll have to wait 1400 years to Chapter ?? for him to appear and save the day.

3962 3963 3964 3965 3966 3967

3968 Not always appreciated, was the fact that in *Almagest*, the outer planet's deferents were all taken to be the same radius and that the distances were all set by the epicycle's individual radii. He chose 60 "units" (always working within the Babylonian base-60 sexagesimal system we use today for time and angles) for that common deferent radius with the Mars:Jupiter:Saturn epicycle radii in proportions

3969 3970 3971 3972

3973 of approximately 7:2:1. This was because the planetary models in *Almagest* were
 3974 not a system. Much like Eudoxus before him, he treated each planet separately
 3975 and made no attempt to merge them, until much later in his life. Figure ?? shows
 Ptolemy's independent planetary pieces.

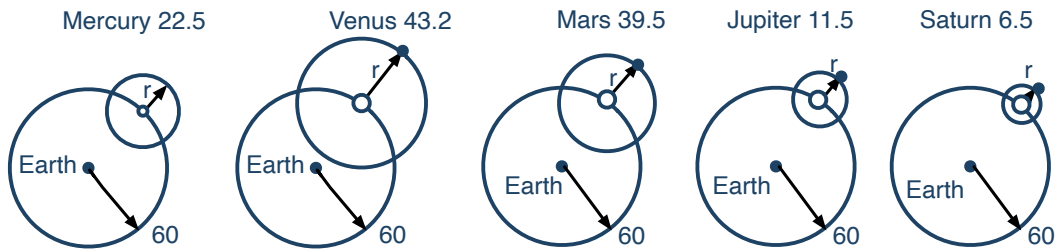


Figure 3.22: Each of the planets' epicycles are shown with their differing r values listed above as they ride on their deferents which each of the same radius. The units are arbitrary, so the relative epicycle radius to deferent is a measure of their relationship to the Earth. So the larger is r , the closer that planet is to Earth.

3976

3977 3.7.2 Ptolemy's Cosmology.

3978 Just as it was important for Aristotle to build a multi-planet system out of Eudoxus'
 3979 separate planets, it obviously seemed incomplete to Ptolemy also. So he later
 3980 wrote *Planetary Hypotheses* which upgraded some of his measurements but also
 3981 presented a whole cosmology of all of the heavenly objects. Figure ?? (a) shows it
 3982 in a simplified format with an abstraction of the epicycles for each planet: the line
 3983 in each epicycle shows the relationship of the planet to the center of its epicycle.
 3984 Notice that for the outer planets, the epicycles are constructed for that line-direction
 3985 in each is parallel to one another and parallel to a line connecting Earth to the Sun.
 3986 For the inner planets, it's the *centers* of their epicycles that all lie on that parallel line
 3987 connecting the Earth to the Sun.

▷ The Sun drives the whole machinery and the inner planets and outer planets have different models and constraints. But those clues weren't enough to resurrect the Aristarchus model with the Sun at the center. Such was still the strong pull of Aristotle's prejudices.

3988 Recall in Section ??, I noted that that the classical planet ordering was Plato's
 3989 and Aristotle's: Earth–Moon–Sun–Mercury–Venus–Mars–Jupiter–Saturn and the stars.
 3990 Ptolemy made the executive decision to change that to Earth–Moon–Mercury–
 3991 Venus–Sun–Mars–Jupiter–Saturn and because of his authority, it stuck. (Again,
 3992 notice that the Sun sits between (our) inner and outer planets. Interestingly, when-
 3993 ever a Medieval or Renaissance rendering of Aristotle's cosmos was presented in

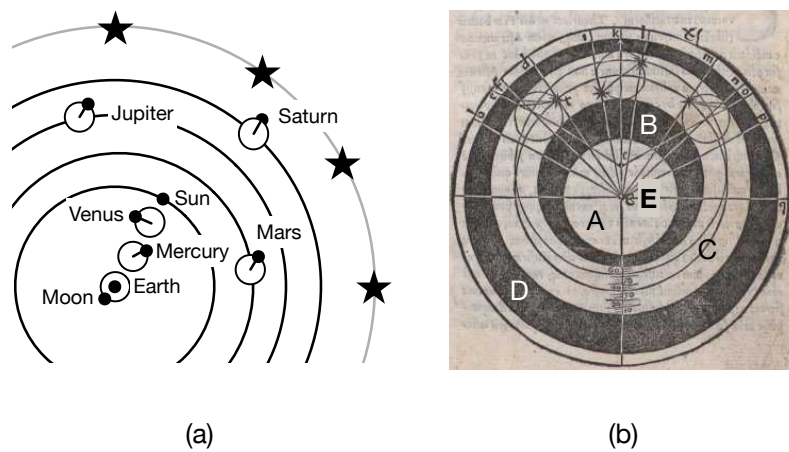


Figure 3.23: The whole cosmology of Ptolemy. In (a) the planets, and Sun are arranged in a very particular way relative to the Sun. The lines in the circles for each planet represent the center of epicycle to the planet. For each of the outer planets, the epicycle-to-planet lines are all parallel to one another and parallel to the line that connects the Earth to the centers of the inner planets, to the Sun. The centers of the deferents for each inner planet and the Moon are all along one another and point at the Sun. **The Sun is always key.** In (b) an image from *Theoricae novae planetarum* by Georg Peurbach is shown which represents a slice through the Medieval idea of Ptolemy's 3-dimensional model for one planet. Notice the epicycle in various positions inside of the region labeled C. The other labels are described in the text. (Wikipedia, Georg Peurbach)

3994 books it was Ptolemy's not Aristotle's ordering that was used. Sometimes Ptolemy's
 3995 name is included on an image, even though the picture might be Aristotle's equal-
 3996 orbit, totally geocentric geometry. Ptolemy's and Aristotle's pictures get mixed up
 3997 during Medieval and Renaissance depictions.

3998 *Planetary Hypotheses* also presented a physical model for his cosmology. In it, there
 3999 are solid aether spheres which carry the epicycles through...pathways in the solid
 4000 aether around the Earth. This wasn't interpreted as an image until the early part of
 4001 the 15th century when Georg Peurbach's 1454 *New Theories of the Planets* included
 4002 the image shown in Figure ?? (b).²² Think of this as a slice through a spherical aether
 4003 unit required to support and guide a planet. The light volume labeled A would
 4004 contain another such unit, and so on...so that together they would nest together like
 4005 Russian dolls. It's what's in a unit that's hard to swallow. The light region, C, is a
 4006 kind of hollowed-out shell within which an epicycle rolls around a diameter. It's
 4007 off center since the planet follows the epicycle sometimes close to the Earth, E, and
 4008 sometimes away from it.

4009 He imagined that the largest excursion of, say, Mercury's orbit in its epicycle,
 4010 constrained inside of Mercury's C cavity, would just match the smallest excursion of
 4011 Venus' orbit in its epicycle, within its C cavity. Then the largest excursion of Venus'
 4012 orbit would just match the inner excursion of the Sun's and so on. He packed them
 4013 together with minimal spacers of aether (D and B in Figure ?? (b)).

4014 He demanded uniform motion of the spheres, but the shifting of their centers is a
 4015 problem. Imagine a soccer ball spinning around an axis at a uniform rate. Can it spin
 4016 around another axis parallel to the first one at a uniform rate? No! It's physically
 4017 impossible and this truly offended many Muslim astronomers and mathematicians
 4018 who attacked his physical model in no uncertain terms.

4019 While his planetary orbits were independent of one another, their relative orbital
 4020 sizes could be calculated as each is determined by the tight-fit. So if you knew the
 4021 size of one of them, you could then establish the size of others, working your way
 4022 from edge to edge of each "spherical space-shell."

4023 He knew the distance from the Earth to the Moon (from studies like that of
 4024 Aristarchus) and the Earth to the Sun and in this way he actually calculated the dis-
 4025 tance from Earth *to each planet and to the stars themselves!* For example he calculated
 4026 that the maximum distance from the Earth to Venus was 1079 Earth radii. (Today,
 4027 we know that the maximum Earth-Venus distance, across the Sun pretending that
 4028 they are as far away from one another as possible is more like 25,000 Earth radii.)
 4029 For fun, he predicted that the distance from the Earth to the Stars—the *size of the*
 4030 *entire universe*—would be $20,000 \times E_R$, or 126,000 km. Both an astonishing feat—

²²We'll meet Peurbach in the next chapter.

4031 calculating the size of the entire universe—and wildly wrong. His universe’s size is
4032 smaller than the actual furthest separation of Earth and Venus in our world.

4033 3.7.3 Summary of the Astronomy of Ptolemy

4034 (Set the context with the timeline in Figure ?? on page ??.)

- 4035 • Ptolemy (85 to 165):
 - 4036 – He wrote the mammoth book, *Mathematical Composition*, nicknamed by
4037 Islamic astronomers as *Almagest*, which became its label to this day (it’s
4038 in the dictionary of your word processor). It was the definitive tool for
4039 predicting the positions of all of the heavenly bodies. The naive Coperni-
4040 can heliocentric model is mathematically identical to the epicyclic model
4041 of Ptolemy. No better, no worse than Ptolemy’s.
 - 4042 – He created a star catalog of more than a 1000 stars, including a subjective
4043 measure of each’s brightness.
 - 4044 – He continued Hipparchus’ solar model with a separate, and corroborat-
4045 ing measurement of the eccentric.
 - 4046 – He adopted the epicycle model of Apollonius and found ways to assign
4047 measured parameters to the epicycle variables: the deferent radii he took
4048 as constant and found epicycle speeds of rotation, radius, and orbital
4049 speeds on the deferents, separately for each planet.
 - 4050 – He wrote a “handbook” (*Handy Tables*) that would teach an astronomer,
4051 physician, or astrologer how to predict the positions of planets using
4052 his model, without having to absorb the considerable mathematics of
4053 *Almagest*.
 - 4054 – He later wrote a complete cosmology that attempted to put all of the
4055 planets, epicycles and all, into one nested cosmological model. This
4056 allowed him to make predictions about the sizes of orbits.

4057 3.7.4 The End of Greek Astronomy

4058 Think about the conceptual leap that we’ve taken: we’ve gone from Aristotle who
4059 told picture-stories about the universe to Ptolemy who quantitatively modeled the
4060 entire universe! He used measurable parameters that located all of the heavenly
4061 bodies, predicted their motions, and proposed numerical distances to every object
4062 including the size of the entire universe. It’s an astonishing feat and nobody
4063 successfully challenged it for 1400 years (although there were many attempts by the
4064 Muslim astronomy and mathematics community) which is a pretty good record.

4065 He was the last Greek astronomer. Science would explore new frontiers, but the

4066 Greeks would no longer be the explorers. Rather western research²³ in MOTION BY
 4067 THE EARTH and MOTION IN THE HEAVENS shifted to India and among the Muslim
 4068 scholars who did some original work, and translated, preserved, and commented
 4069 on Greek writings—especially Ptolemy.

4070 3.7.5 One More Thing?

4071 This was an unusual set of chapters and what follows will be considerably less
 4072 sweeping and more focused. But the scene is now set for the full story of MOTION
 4073 BY THE EARTH, MOTION ON THE EARTH, and MOTION IN THE HEAVENS. Here's a
 4074 fascinating coda to our Ptolemy story. He was so close!

4075 Imagine a very simple auto race with two cars. The track consists of two lanes,
 4076 both circular around a common center. One lane, in which car M stays has a larger
 4077 radius than the other lane in which car E is constrained, So it's not a fair race, since
 4078 M has further to go in a revolution than E . But, this is an analogy.

4079 From the stands you can watch the two cars go in their counterclockwise circuit and
 4080 here not only does E have an advantage as the inside lane, but E is also faster than
 4081 M . So naturally, *it will periodically lap and pass M*. When that happens, to the driver
 4082 in E it looks like M is in front...and then seems to E to go backwards as it's lapped!

4083 By now you realize that in this race analogy I can substitute E for Earth, M for
 4084 Mars, and S for Sun and we've just described a simple solar system of two planets
 4085 viewed from two different perspectives (the people watching the race, and E). It
 4086 should be, and is, possible to construct an algorithm (involving vectors) to translate
 4087 the motions from one frame to the other. The spectator's view corresponds to a
 4088 solar system of the sort that you have learned that Copernicus described: all of
 4089 the planets orbiting the Sun in perfect circles and the other, is the solar system that
 4090 Ptolemy discovered in which the Earth is stationary and the Sun and planets orbit
 4091 it...but on epicycles.

▷ The Ptolemaic model is mathematically identical to the Copernican model in which the orbit of an outer planet (like Mars) has the same dimension as the deferent circle of the Ptolemaic model.

4092 What Ptolemy accomplished was an extraordinary mathematical feat. In fact, it's
 4093 much more complicated than our modern view! He took a long, intellectual journey
 4094 to his model whereas if he'd taken Aristarchus' model with the Sun in the center
 4095 and circular orbits of the planets...he would have had a much simpler task. But
 4096 what was in his way?

²³There was a parallel research path in China, but it didn't influence the eventual progress Europe

4097 It was Ptolemy's commitment to the Aristotelian edict that the MOTION BY THE
 4098 EARTH is zero, wrongly supported by a misunderstanding of the physics of MOTION
 4099 ON THE EARTH *that was in the way of creating the better model*. Unraveling this is the
 4100 task of this book: getting, first, the MOTION ON THE EARTH right and then applying
 4101 it to MOTION BY THE EARTH and MOTION IN THE HEAVENS. It didn't come easy.

4102 3.8 Greek Astronomy, Today

4103 3.8.1 Let's Set The Record Straight: How we now understand the sky

4104 From our more advanced vantage point: every one of the above points in Section ??
 4105 is explained overall by a Sun-centered solar system (with some nuance) around
 4106 which the Earth and other planets orbit.

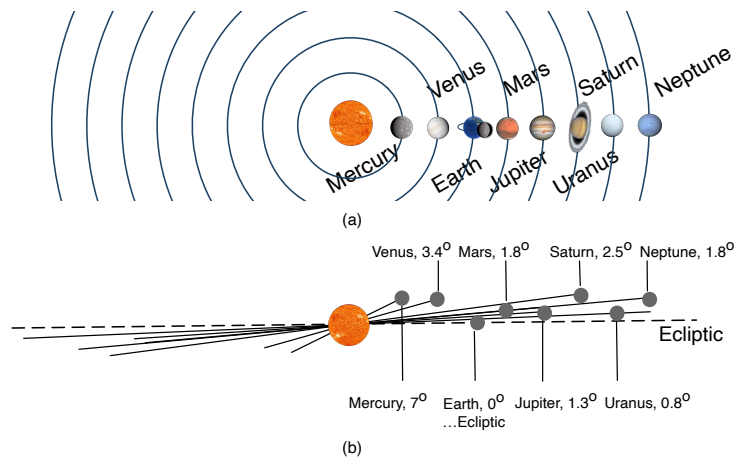


Figure 3.24: (a) is an abstract sketch of the solar system as we picture it today and which we credit to Copernicus. "Abstract" because the alignment of the planets is for display purposes, actual relative radii of the orbits are not anything like shown, and the orbits are elliptical, not circular. (b) shows what the relative orbital planes are for each planet. The planets all have orbital planes inclined slightly to the overall ecliptic (the dashed horizontal line is the edge of the ecliptic plane). Notice that Mercury's is the one with the highest inclination of 7° . Pluto's is almost 17° up and down, indicative of its not belonging in the club of solar system planets.

4107 **Elliptical orbits.** We know that our solar system is built of eight planets (Mercury,
 4108 Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune). Figure ?? (a) is familiar
 4109 to all schoolchildren today. We know that their orbits are not circular, but slightly
 4110 elliptical, with the Sun at a focal point and as such, when they are close to the Sun,
 4111 they whip around it fast and when they are far from the Sun their motion is slower.
 4112 They are nearly all in the same plane, which is shown in Figure ?? (b) where we
 4113 take Earth's orbital plane to define the ecliptic (0°) so relative to that, Mercury's

4114 orbit is the most inclined at $\pm 7^\circ$ from the ecliptic. All of the other planets' orbits
 4115 are within that 14° band. For those of you mourning the elimination of Pluto from
 4116 the planetary family, it's inclination to the ecliptic is more like $\pm 17^\circ$, as are other
 4117 dwarf planets in the outer edges of the solar system. The undisputed opinion now
 4118 is that Pluto's existence is due to some event that is not of the same origin of the
 other planets. Hence, it's being voted off of the planetary island.

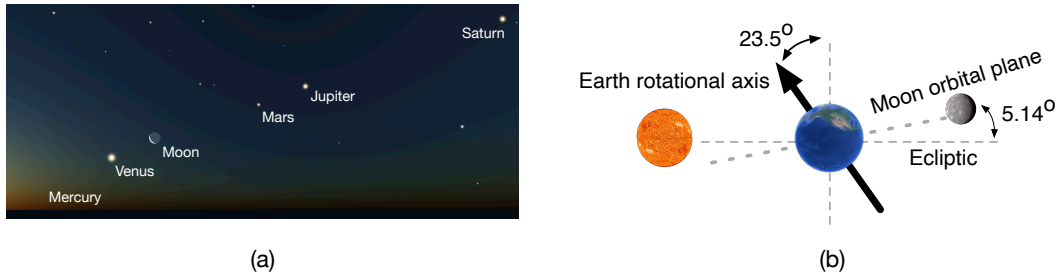


Figure 3.25: The inclination of the Earth's spinning is oriented away from being perpendicular to the ecliptic in which the Earth's orbit is fixed. Also, the orbital plane of the Moon's orbit around the Earth is slightly inclined relative to the ecliptic as well.

4119

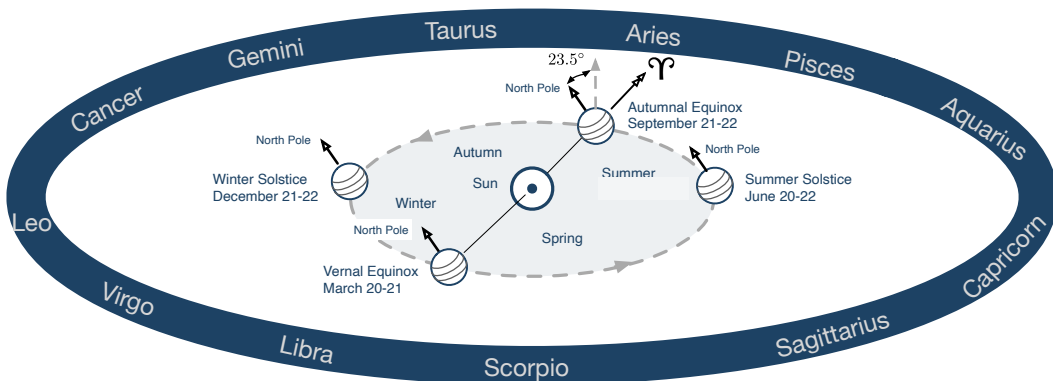


Figure 3.26: There's a lot in this image. The Sun (\odot) is at the center and ecliptic is shown as the gray circle around which the Earth orbits. The 23.5° inclination is pictured showing how the solstices are inclined in our northern hemisphere's summer and winter. The Vernal Equinox (♈) is pointing at the zodiacal constellation of Aries, as it was in ancient times (today, it's in Pisces).

4120 Figure ?? (a) shows a line-up of planets (in simulation) as they appeared in the
 4121 eastern sky on June 24, 2022 just before dawn from East Lansing, Michigan. Notice
 4122 that the Sun is just peeking over the horizon and Mercury, Venus, the Moon, Mars,
 4123 Jupiter, and Saturn are all nearly in a line along the ecliptic. Figure ?? (b) shows that
 4124 the Moon's orbit is inclined to the ecliptic by about 5° which is why we don't see
 4125 lunar and solar eclipses every month. (Hipparchus determined this angle.)

4126 The Earth is tilted by that seemingly random 23.5° that figured so prominently in

4127 the stories above and in Figure ?? the Earth is shown at the four seasonal points
 4128 of the two equinoxes and the two solstices. The shaded circle is inscribed by the
 4129 ecliptic and is the plane with all of the planets, including Earth. Notice that the
 4130 Earth is tilted by that 23.5° as measured from the plane of the ecliptic and that
 4131 its direction does not move throughout the year and points to the Celestial Pole.
 4132 The Vernal Equinox is shown when the Sun is within the Aries constellation (as in
 4133 antiquity).

4134 Now we can understand both cause of the seasons and why they are of different
 4135 durations and Figure ?? tells the whole story. When the Earth's orbit is closest to
 4136 the Sun, it's moving the fastest in its elliptical orbit, so it spends less time between
 4137 the two equinoxes, here on the left side of its orbit. Notice that the tilt of the Earth's
 4138 axis is away from the Sun, and so the full-force of the Sun's rays are directed, not
 4139 to the northern hemisphere, but the southern. In fact, at the Tropic of Capricorn
 4140 at a latitude of 23.5° South, the Sun would be overhead at the winter solstice. So
 4141 less radiation intensity falling on the northern hemisphere, means it's cooler. So
 4142 yes, the winter happens when the Earth is nearest to the Sun. On the other side,
 4143 at the summer solstice, the Sun's rays are intense on the northern hemisphere as
 4144 the Earth's tilt is now towards it and the Sun is overhead at noon on the summer
 4145 solstice at the latitude of the Tropic of Cancer—where Syene is located at 23.5°
 4146 North.

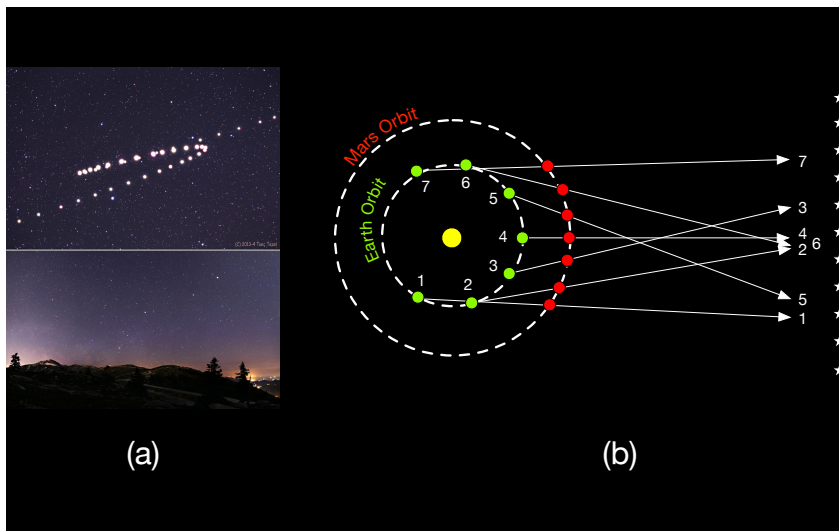


Figure 3.27: Retrograde motion by Mars. In (a) the sky in Turkey shows a photograph of Mars from December 5, 2013 in the upper right hand corner and then an overlaid photograph taken every five or six nights until August 8, 2014. The looping behavior in the middle is the retrograde motion. (b) shows how this happens (see the text for an explanation) <https://twanight.org/gallery/tracing-the-red-planet/?preview=true>

4147 **Spinning Earth.** The Earth has two motions, as do all of the planets. It orbits the

4148 Sun in a nearly circular path in a counterclockwise sense when viewed from above
 4149 the Sun's north pole. The Earth also spins on its own axis, also in a counterclockwise
 4150 sense.²⁴ That the Earth spins on its axis explains the apparent motion of the Sun
 4151 through our sky from E-W each day. The speed of the surface of the Earth due to its
 4152 spinning is about 460 m/s (about 1000 mph) while the speed of the Earth's track
 4153 along its orbit is 220 km/s (about 490,000 mph). We don't feel this motion since it is
 4154 constant and we're held to the surface by the Earth's gravity. The same thing is true
 4155 for the air and so we don't feel a wind as if the Earth were moving out from under
 4156 the atmosphere.

4157 **Planets' orbits.** The strange retrograde motion is easily explained in the heliocentric
 4158 system. Earth and Mars, for example, have different "years" as they go around the
 4159 Sun. Sometimes the Earth will lap Mars and leave it behind. That's the story and
 4160 Figure ?? explains it. In (a), we see a time-lapse photograph of Mars in successive
 4161 nights from December to August. Clearly Mars appears to "move" against the stars.
 4162 (b) shows how. Each

4163 3.8.2 Hipparchus and Modern Celestial Coordinate Systems

4164 (**duke2002**) correctly argues that the coordinate system that Hipparchus seems
 4165 to have originated and Ptolemy perpetuated is essentially identical to what is
 4166 used today in astronomy, called the "equatorial system." Figure ?? (a) shows the
 4167 situation. What Hipparchus did was measure the angle of a star relative to the
 4168 North Celestial Pole and an angle along the ecliptic. If you look at Figure ?? you'll
 4169 see that the Earth is surrounded by the 12 constellations of the zodiac. The Greeks
 4170 (and Babylonians) divided the whole circular pattern into 12 signs, each of 30° each
 4171 and his coordinate system referred to the constellation and then the number of
 4172 degrees within that constellation. This is like the longitude on the Earth's surface—
 4173 degrees around. The "zero" of this coordinate system is located at the position of the
 4174 Vernal Equinox, which recall is where the Sun on the ecliptic crosses the Celestial
 4175 Equator during the spring. The Sun was in the constellation Aries during these
 4176 times (which is why the symbol for the Vernal Equinox is ♈, which is the symbol
 4177 for that constellation. Today, the VE has moved to the constellation Pisces precisely
 4178 because of the precession phenomenon that Hipparchus discovered.²⁵ (More about
 4179 the Vernal Equinox below.) So in the *Commentary*, he wrote about the constellation
 4180 Bootes (not among the 12 zodiac members):

4181 "Bootes rises together with the zodiac from the beginning of the Maiden to the 27th

²⁴only Venus among the planets spins in a clockwise sense while Uranus has a spin axis which is on its side, relative to the others. One explanation is that, like the Moon was created through some billions of years ago collision with the Earth, so to something massive might have struck the adolescent Venus and Uranus. Multiple hypotheses exist.

²⁵The "Age of Aquarius" is next, as precession continues.

4182 degree of the Maiden... Hipparchus, ”

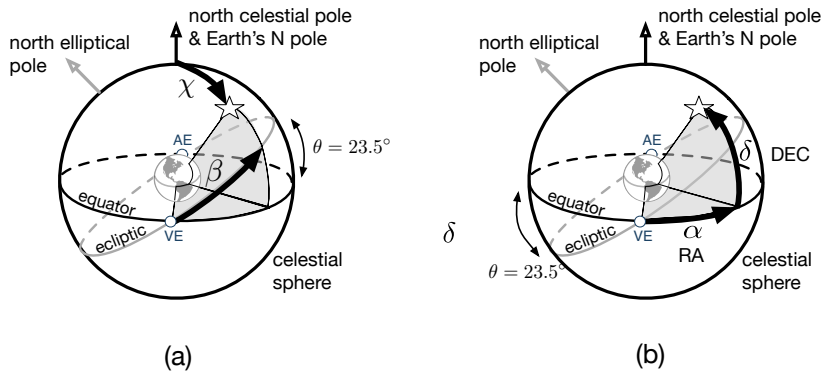


Figure 3.28: The Celestial Sphere is shown in both diagrams for two different coordinate systems that can be used to locate a star on the Sphere. In (a) the “longitudinal” coordinate (β) is along the ecliptic starting from the position of the Vernal Equinox along the ecliptic and the “latitude” coordinate (χ) is measured from the Celestial Pole to the star along a great circle. In (b) the longitude (α) is along the Celestial Equator from the Vernal Equinox (and so identical in angle to β) and the latitude is measured up from the Celestial Equator (δ). The coordinate system in (a) is called the Ecliptic Coordinate System and (b), the Equatorial Coordinate System. (b) is the standard modern system for star charts in which δ is called “declination” and α is called “Right Ascension” (and is recorded in modern tables in units of time, rather than angle where 24 hours equals 360°). A modern version of the Ecliptic Coordinate System uses $\lambda = 66.5^\circ - \chi$, but I represented it here from the pole because Ptolemy measured χ for “latitude.” Hipparchus seems to have used both of these systems while Ptolemy used (a).

4183 The “Maiden” is Virgo which is the 6th constellation (“sign”) around from Aries
 4184 (Figure ??). So the angle, α in the figure where the constellation Bootes rises is
 4185 $(6 - 1) \times 30^\circ + 27^\circ = 177^\circ$.²⁶ A modern version of Bootes extends 202° to 237° ,
 4186 so it doesn’t appear to match? Ah, but the precession of the equinoxes is worth
 4187 $1^\circ/72$ years, so we need to add that factor times the number of years since Hip-
 4188 parchus recorded his measurement 2153 years ago—that’s an additional 30° which
 4189 makes that edge be 207° : Hipparchus is just right.

4190 For the other coordinate, he measured from the North Celestial Pole *down to the*
 4191 *object* of interest, χ in the figure. That’s the “polar angle” and is the opposite of our
 4192 Earth-faced latitude, which measures up from the equator.

The modern equatorial system uses the same idea. For the polar angle, a star or object’s “latitude” coordinate is measured *up from the Celestial Equator*. This is called the “Declination, δ .” So it’s identical through a difference of 90° :

$$\chi = 90 - \delta.$$

²⁶Because Aries the first sign starts at 0° , so the 6th sign starts with 150°

4193 This north-south polar angle measure is called “co-declination.”

4194 The modern longitude, called the Right Ascension, α , is measured also from the
4195 location of the Vernal Equinox, but typically recorded as a time, rather than an angle.
4196 This is natural, since the whole Celestial Sphere rotates 360° in 24 hours. So while
4197 the edge of Bootes is 202° for Hipparchus’ units, it’s $13^h36.1^m$.

4198 About the Vernal Equinox. I don’t believe that there’s any record of just how
4199 Hipparchus could have determined the location of the VE in the zodiac. After all,
4200 the Vernal Equinox for the Greeks was determined at noon on that day when the
4201 Sun is precisely between its altitude at the two solstices, and equivalently, when it
4202 rises and sets precisely in the east and the west. His accuracy was about $1/4$ of a
4203 day for observations and I can think of two ways he might have done this.

4204 He would surely already know roughly when the equinox was to happen and
4205 would start measuring the Sun’s location, rise, and set for days before and days
4206 after the expected event. Then, later he could figure out precisely which day. But
4207 along with his altitude measurements, he might look at the east just before the Sun
4208 rises each of those days and precisely located which constellations were still visible
4209 before it becomes bright. Likewise, he would look just after sundown to see what
4210 constellations would be “coming out” as it gets dark.

4211 He could also have noted when the equinox occurred, waited exactly 12 hours and
4212 then looked to see which constellation would be at the altitude of the Sun at noon.

4213 In both of these, he would presumably conclude that it was Aries and the “First
4214 Point of Aries” became the nickname for where the Vernal Equinox is in the sky.

4215 3.8.3 New Evidence for Hipparchus’ Lost Star Catalog

4216 When we’re talking about millennia, “breaking news” needn’t be “yesterday.” So
4217 there is remarkable Breaking News when it comes to Hipparchus’ star catalog. Parts
4218 of it might have been found.

4219 In 2012 Jamie Klair, an undergraduate at the University of Cambridge was studying
4220 a multi-spectrum image of folio pages of an ancient Greek palimpsest²⁷ known
4221 as the *Codex Climaci Rescriptus* at St Catherine’s Monastery on the Sinai Peninsula
4222 (now in Museum of the Bible’s collection in Washington, D.C.). It was a summer
4223 project assigned by biblical historian at the University of Cambridge, Peter Williams,
4224 who continued the work and in 2017 he and French collaborators confirmed the
4225 observation and found more of it. They recently published it in (**Gysemergh2022**).
4226 In that image an under-text is slightly visible which he realized appeared to contain
4227 astronomical notations—actually a quotation from Eratosthenes. It appears that the

²⁷a document that has been reused by scrubbing out the original content

4228 original writings were erased in the 9th or 10th century and overwritten. But the
4229 multispectral imaging brings out the original impressions on 9 of the 146 pages.

4230 By digitally bringing out the faint background writing, it's apparently astronomical
4231 data, coordinates, actually. Almost certainly from Hipparchus' observations. For
4232 example, one of the decoded and translated phrases in the hidden text is:

4233 Corona Borealis, lying in the northern hemisphere, in length spans $9^{\circ}1/4$ from the first
4234 degree of Scorpius to $10^{\circ}1/4$ in the same zodiacal sign (i.e. in Scorpius). In breadth it
4235 spans $6^{\circ}3/4$ from 49° from the North Pole to $55^{\circ}3/4$.

4236 They noted that "length" is the east-west measure and "breadth" is the north-south
4237 measure. The north-south measure is as above, the co-declination and the east-
4238 west measure is again the Right Ascension, in angular units. Scorpio is the 8th
4239 constellation, so from the previous section, that's $7 \times 30^{\circ} + 1 = 211^{\circ}$. Adding the
4240 30° for precession since then would give a RA today of 240° . The edge of Corona
4241 Borealis is almost exactly that.

4242 The stars in the 9 pages refer mostly to Ursa Major, Ursa Minor and Draco and the
4243 values are essentially those in Hipparchus' *Commentary*. The general consensus is
4244 that this is the first concrete evidence for the long-lost Star Catalog of Hipparchus!

4245 **Appendix A**

4246 **Appendices**

4247 **A.1 Greeks Technical Appendix**

4248 **A.1.1 Proof of Pythagoras' Theorem**

4249 **A.1.2 Zeno's Paradox**

4250 **A.2 Plato–Aristotle Technical Appendix**

4251 **A.2.1 Socrates' Geometrical Problem**

4252 **A.2.2 Logic and Electronics**

4253 **A.2.3 Aristotle's Legacy in Physics and Engineering**

4254 This section is a little more detailed than normal, but the payoff is large! Aristotle
4255 left us a legacy which instantly became an active research project for ancient and
4256 medieval philosophers and eventually, present day philosophers, mathematicians,
4257 engineers, and scientists! He created a tool that guarantees how to properly analyze
4258 and judge conclusions reached through argument: Formal Logic. Read the next
4259 seven pages in detail for the whole story, skim them for a taste, or jump to the
4260 punch-line on page ??.

4261 In everyday life, we all make arguments but have you ever thought about what
4262 makes you successful in defending your case? The facts need to be on your side but
4263 your stated reasoning should also be “logical.” We all have a sense of what “logical”
4264 means, but it's surprisingly nuanced. Consider the following reasoning:

- 4265 • Squirrels with superpowers can fly
- 4266 • Rocky the Squirrel has superpowers
- 4267 • Therefore, Rocky the Squirrel can fly.

4268 This doesn't make sense because the first two sentences—the "premises"— are
 4269 nonsense. And yet *it's a perfectly valid argument!* Appreciating the difference between
 4270 a *valid* argument and a *true* argument leads us to Aristotle's amazing discovery
 4271 that the rules of valid reasoning are due entirely to an argument's structure and
 4272 arrangements of the sentences, not the specifics of the content. Your and my lives
 4273 are now governed by Aristotle's invention of Formal Logic, his most important,
 4274 lasting contribution.

4275 Obviously, the distinction between *validity* and *truth* can be easy to spot. But the
 4276 distinction between valid and invalid argument can be subtle. Think about these
 4277 two arguments:

Table A.1: How to not reason logically.

A	B
Those who take the vaccine stay well. Those who take the vaccine are smart. Those who are smart stay well.	Those who take the vaccine stay well. Those who are smart take the vaccine. Those who are smart stay well.

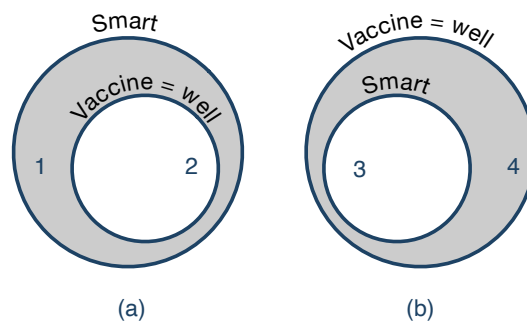


Figure A.1: A diagrammatic way to show that argument A in Table ?? is invalid and that the conclusion of argument B is valid.

4278 The argument in column A is invalid, not because the premises are ludicrous, but
 4279 because of the form of the terms in the sentences. Read it very carefully with an
 4280 eye on Figure ??. Notice how the righthand and lefthand circles are different (not
 4281 really Venn diagrams, but a cousin, called Euler Diagrams). The first premise in
 4282 argument A is that if you take the vaccine you're going to be well. So in the lefthand
 4283 diagram, everyone who took the vaccine is in region 2. The second premise in
 4284 argument A says that those who took the vaccine are smart, but it doesn't rule out
 4285 the logical possibility that some smart people didn't take the vaccine—region 1. So
 4286 the conclusion, that if you're smart, you're well does not hold.

4287 Argument B says things slightly differently. Again, smart=well. But then the second
 4288 premise says that if you're smart, you took the vaccine, so all of the smart people

4289 are in region 2 and, they're vaccinated. That, of course leaves the possibility that
 4290 there are people who took the vaccine, but aren't smart, region 4. That's good! But
 4291 not the argument which leads to a valid conclusion: Those who are smart stay well
 4292 (and because of the first premise, they also took the vaccine).

4293 A.2.3.1 Greatest gift

4294 Aristotle's greatest gift to us was his invention of Formal Logic which is a rigorous
 4295 way to judge the validity of arguments. For example, he could tell you that the
 4296 argument in column **A** is not valid and why and tell you how to construct arguments
 4297 like column **B** which *are* logically valid. Every time. And sometimes surprisingly,
 4298 independent of the actual subject-matter of the argument.

4299 Officially, Formal Logic is the field that studies reasoning and the various ways that
 4300 conclusions can legitimately be drawn from premises.

4301 This new-born subject is covered in a number of his books, including: *Categories, On*
 4302 *Interpretation, Prior Analytics, Posterior Analytics, Topics, and On Sophistical Refutations*
 4303 which collectively, were much later dubbed "*Organon*" which means "instrument"
 4304 which suggest by that time, Logic was viewed as just a tool, as opposed to a part of
 4305 philosophy. Now it's firmly the philosophical camp and even an important part of
 4306 an entire branch of mathematics called Discrete Mathematics.

4307 Logic became a research program almost as soon as he wrote it down (or lectured
 4308 on it) and two millennia worth of people—to this day—study logical formalism,
 4309 expanding it into new directions. It's studied by every student of physics and
 4310 engineering in forms directly evolved from Aristotle.

4311 A.2.3.2 Deduction and Induction

4312 Broadly, there are two kinds of logic which you use every day. The first works
 4313 according to strict rules which I think of it as the *algebra of reasoning* and you'll see
 4314 why in a bit. Reason according to those rules, and you will reach correct conclusions.
 4315 This is **Deductive Logic**.

4316 The second kind of logic is less certain since it's not rule-bound and it delivers
 4317 conclusions which can seem persuasive but aren't certain. This is **Inductive Logic**.
 4318 From this point, when I refer to "logic" I'll mean deductive logic.

4319 Among things that are obvious to us (and to everyday Greeks), Aristotle seemed
 4320 to intuit as requiring bottom-up attention. He tightly defined terms and "obvious"
 4321 ideas, dissected arguments finding rules along the way, and set down what it means
 4322 to be clear with exquisite precision. Look at these two statements:

- 4323 • All squirrels are brown.
 4324 • No squirrels are brown
- 4325 1) Can these both be true at the same time? Of course not and this obvious idea
 4326 has a name: *the law of contradiction*. Aristotle needed to be precise and actually
 4327 provided multiple “proofs” to demonstrate this principle.
- 4328 2) One of these must be true...there’s nothing in-between, which is called the
 4329 *law of the excluded middle*.
- 4330 “...there cannot be an intermediate between contradictories, but of one subject we
 4331 must either affirm or deny any one predicate” Aristotle, *Metaphysics*.

4332 Centuries of ink have been spilled over precisely understanding the implications
 4333 of law of the excluded middle and how to symbolically state it unequivocally. But
 4334 here’s the first hint of our modern debt to him: his logic is two-valued, either true
 4335 or false with no in-between. Hmm. Binary: True and false...one’s and zero’s.¹

4336 Last one:

- 4337 • A squirrel is a squirrel.

4338 This is called *the law of identity* and Aristotle didn’t invent it and it sounds like
 4339 Parmenides: “What **is, is**.” These three ideas, collected together by him, are often
 4340 called the Rules of Thought and were believed to be the bedrock for all of Logic.
 4341 (That this was disputed in the 20th century shows that Logic is still a living-breathing
 4342 subject.) Nobody ever thought this way before — so clearly—and in Aristotle’s
 4343 patented approach to system-building, he lays it all out exhaustively. As a
 4344 master system-builder, he was the right man for the job.

4345 His unique invention was to create an *algebra of language*. Here is a seminal moment
 4346 in history, from the first book of his *Prior Analytics* (focus on the last sentences):

4347 “First then take a universal negative with the terms A and B. If no B is A, neither can
 4348 any A be B. For if some A (say C) were B, it would not be true that no B is A; for C is a
 4349 B. But if every B is A then some A is B. For if no A were B, then no B could be A. But
 4350 we assumed that every B is A. Similarly too, if the premiss is particular. For if some B
 4351 is A, then some of the As must be B. For if none were, then no B would be A. But if
 4352 some B is not A, there is no necessity that some of the As should not be B; e.g. **let B**
 4353 **stand for animal and A for man. Not every animal is a man; but every man is an**
 4354 **animal.**” Aristotle, *Prior Analytics*.

4355 I don’t blame you if you get bogged down quickly in this quote. Look at the
 4356 sentences that I’ve highlighted: he’s using variables A and B, to stand for particular

¹Things didn’t stop there. Now there is a multi-valued logic with degrees of truth and falsity with many engineering applications. “Fuzzy Logic” is a legitimate decision-making tool in transportation control systems, earthquake prediction, even home appliance efficiency.

4357 things, here in his example, A = man and B = animal. So his first sentence says
 4358 for this particular case, “If no animal is a man, neither can any man be an animal.”
 4359 Instead of men and animals, you can plug in anything you want for A and B. It’s
 4360 the form of the argument, not the contents that determine whether the argument is
 4361 valid.

4362 **Introducing variables as a placeholder for the subjects and objects in a statement**
 4363 **is a seminal moment in the history of mathematics.**

4364 Amazing. Out of this, your mobile phone was born.

4365 There are many different forms of arguments and for Aristotle, the **Syllogism** is
 4366 just one of them. It’s an argument written in a structure in which there are three
 4367 sentences with a subject and a predicate²: two premises and a conclusion and inside
 4368 those sentences are three “terms.”

4369 Here is one of the syllogistic forms:³

- 4370 • premise 1: If all A are B
- 4371 • premise 2: and if all C are A
- 4372 • conclusion: then, all C are B

4373 There are actually 256 possible argument-combinations of subjects and predicates
 4374 and 24 were thought to yield valid deductions. Maybe you can see why studying Logic
 became a matter of intense research following Aristotle’s death and into the first 100
 years of both Arab and Western philosophers. There was lots of work to do.

4375 Let’s make a syllogistic argument about squirrels. I’ll define C = squirrels, A = the
 4376 group of all animals in trees, and B = brown animals. One kind of syllogism would
 4377 have the form:

- 4378 • All mammals in trees (A) are brown animals (B)
- 4379 • and if all squirrels (C) are mammals in trees (A)
- 4380 • then, all squirrels (C) are brown animals (B).

4381 Before I moved to Michigan, the only squirrels I’d ever seen were brown. Now my
 4382 yard is full of black squirrels. They’re everywhere. Yet, my argument above seems
 4383 to prove that squirrels are brown. So what went wrong?

4384 My “Squirrels with superpowers” shined a bright light on the premises: they have

²since his Categories are predicates, these topics were a part of his overall system

³Before 500 CE, Aristotle’s original form was used:

- If A, then B
- If B, then C
- So, A is C

4385 to be legitimate. In scientific arguments, premises might be ... hypotheses, in
 4386 which case a deductive argument describes a way to test those ideas. Aristotle was
 4387 well-aware of induction, deduction, and how they might go together.

4388 Back to my squirrels proof. I reasoned inductively:

- 4389 • (As a child) There's a brown squirrel
- 4390 • (As an adult... many times) There goes another brown squirrel
- 4391 • Wow... more brown squirrels and no other ones
- 4392 • What is it with all of the brown squirrels?
- 4393 • Gosh, all squirrels must be brown! (which was my premise)

4394 Until I moved to Michigan. All it took to ruin my theory about squirrels was the
 4395 observation of one black squirrel, much less an entire herd of them. Squirrels are
 4396 not only brown, they're black. My proof founders on a false premise: "All mammals
 4397 in trees (A) are brown animals (B)."

4398 By the way, Sherlock Holmes is reputedly the Master of Deduction. Well, sorry.
 4399 That's not true. If you look at his stories you'll see very, very few examples of
 4400 deductive reasoning. He's the Master of Induction!⁴

4401 A.2.3.3 Your phone

4402 **Theophrastus** (–371 to –287) was a favorite student of Aristotle's who led the
 4403 Lyceum for 37 years after his teacher's death. Aristotle even willed him the
 4404 guardianship of his children...and his library. While a devoted student, Theophras-
 4405 tus went beyond his teacher and expanded and modified some basic Aristotelian
 4406 notions—extending a concept of motion to all 10 of the Categories, for example. He
 4407 also moved the study of botany forward and worked extensively in Logic. Theodor
 4408 Geisel (Dr. Seuss) used "Theophrastus" as a pen name.

4409 He is probably the one who extended the form of argumentation into a new direction
 4410 with the invention of "propositional logic" in which there are two items, rather than
 4411 three of a syllogism. This is where the modern engineering action is. One form
 4412 of such a proposition is called "Modus Ponens" (Latin for "method of affirming")
 4413 which is an offshoot of the classical syllogism and is one of four possible "rules of
 4414 inference." Modus Ponens goes like this:

- 4415 • If A (the antecedent) is true, then B (the consequence) is true
- 4416 • A is true
- 4417 • Therefore, B is true.

4418 Here, each line is a proposition (there can be more than two) with the first two
 4419 being "premises" and the last, the "conclusion." The first sentence is a proposition

⁴Or more appropriately, the Master of Abduction. Look it up.

4420 which is conditional: the antecedent implies the consequence and it's "affirmed" if
 4421 the next statement is true. B here is the consequence of A. Here's a concise way to
 4422 present this:

- 4423 • $A \rightarrow B$
- 4424 • A
- 4425 • $\therefore B$

4426 The \rightarrow symbol means "implies" and is associated with an "If...Then" kind of state-
 4427 ment. The \therefore symbol means "therefore." It doesn't seem like much, but it's powerful
 4428 and misunderstanding (or misusing) it is the source of many logical fallacies. Ta-
 4429 ble ?? shows an example:

Table A.2: A typical logical fallacy involving public health.

A valid argument	A fallacy
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If a reactor leaks radiation (A), people nearby will get cancer (B). • The reactor leaks radiation (A). • Therefore, people nearby will get cancer. (B) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If a reactor leaks radiation (A), people nearby will get cancer (B). • People nearby got cancer (B). • Therefore, the reactor leaks radiation (A).

4430 The argument on the left is an example of Modus Ponens, while the argument on the
 4431 right is a classic fallacy known as "Affirming the Consequent," a regularly exploited
 4432 tool for those intentionally making invalid claims. Especially those who dispute
 4433 public health strategies. Look at how the two columns are different. Remember,
 4434 that in the proposition, B is the consequence of the antecedent, A and not the other
 4435 way around. In the second row of the fallacious argument, the antecedent and
 4436 consequence are reversed as compared with the valid argument. The fallacy is that
 4437 people can get cancer from other causes than the proposition states.

4438 Let's make a plan to picnic outdoors which requires us to keep an eye on the weather
 4439 since if it's raining the ground would be wet and of course we wouldn't have a
 4440 picnic if the ground is wet. We'd actually use Modus Ponens in our thought process
 4441 and reason among ourselves:

- 4442 • If it's raining, then the ground is wet
- 4443 • It is raining
- 4444 • and so the ground is wet.

4445 Let's build a table—a picnic table (sorry)—that takes each line in the argument and
 4446 makes it a column in a table. We could then ask a set of questions: Is it raining (Yes),
 4447 is the ground wet (Yes)...was the proposition confirmed? Yes.

Table A.3: The picnic is cancelled because:

If A, then B	it's raining?	it's wet?	A	B	If A is true and B is true, then:
If it's raining, then the ground is wet	Y	Y	T	T	T

4448 There are actually four complete ways in which the antecedent and consequence
4449 could appear:

- 4450 • rain? Yes or No
- 4451 • wet? Yes or No

4452 So what about: suppose the ground is not wet (wet = F) then can it be raining?
4453 Well...no (rain = F). So if wet = F and rain = T, then the proposition would not be
4454 true since rain should imply wet. We can build up these four conditions into what
4455 is called Truth Table, which was invented in the early 20th century as an analyzing
4456 tool. Table ?? describes the complete story:

Table A.4: All of the logical possibilities for two pieces of a conditional premise: raining and wetness. Here's a picnic table (sorry):

If A, then B	it's raining?	it's wet?	A	B	If A is true and B is true, then:
If it's raining, then the ground is wet	Y	Y	T	T	T
If it's raining, then the ground is not wet	Y	N	T	F	F
If it's not raining, then the ground is wet	N	Y	F	T	T
If it's not raining, then the ground is not wet	N	N	F	F	T

4457 Sometimes these are hard to unravel. The first two lines are pretty obvious. It's
4458 asserted that when it rains that the ground is wet, so the second line is obviously
4459 false. The proposition requires "wet" with rain. The last line is pretty clear also. No
4460 rain, let's picnic since it will not be wet. The third one requires some thought. What
4461 does the if statement say about the ground if it's not raining? Nothing. You could
4462 be wet for other reasons so this does not falsify the proposition, so it's not F...and
4463 in a two-valued logic, the only alternative to F is T. Go lie down before we go on
4464 because it's about to get interesting and relevant.

4465 Before getting to the punchline, let me make a couple of points:

- 4466 • The \rightarrow or if...then argument is one of six “connectives,” all of which have
4467 truth tables like above. They are negation, conjunction (“AND”), disjunction
4468 (“OR”), conditional (that’s the \rightarrow conjunctive), biconditional, and exclusive OR.
- 4469 • The Modus Ponens argument got its Latin name from the Medievals who
4470 seriously studied Logic. They identified it as one of four “Rules of Infer-
4471 ence” which we use today: MP, Modus Tollens, Hypothetical Syllogism, and
4472 Disjunctive Syllogism.
- 4473 • The Hypothetical Syllogism is just one form of the “regular” syllogism of our
4474 squirrel proof above. In fact, it can actually be proved to be the combination
4475 of two Modus Ponens arguments, one for $A \rightarrow B$ and the other for $B \rightarrow C$.
4476 There’s debate about whether Aristotle might have recognized his syllogism
4477 to have been an “hypothetical” in this sense with a deeper structure.
- 4478 • In Appendix ?? I’ve gone into some more detail logic gates as they’re used in
4479 digital circuit design.

4480 There are a handful of seminal discoveries about Logic that extend to our modern
4481 reliance on it. **Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz** (1646–1716) refined binary arithmetic.
4482 In 1854, **George Boole** (1815–1864) invented the algebra of two-valued logic...how
4483 to combine multiple conjunctives into meaningful outcomes which can only be T or
4484 F, 1 or 0. In 1921 in his dense and very terse *Tractatus Logico-Philosophicus*, **Ludwig**
4485 **Wittgenstein** (1889–1951) invented the Truth Table, which can be used in logical
4486 proofs and complicated logical solutions to multi-variable inputs. Finally, in 1938
4487 **Claude Shannon** (1916–2001) realized that Boole’s algebra could be realized in
4488 electronic, “on-off” circuits. This was realized in the 1940’s with vacuum tubes and
4489 then in the 1960’s with transistors.

4490 Notice that the picnic table can be thought of as a little machine: you input the
4491 four T-F possibilities in pairs for rain and wet and out comes the truth value of the
proposition. Figure ?? is a cartoon of such a machine.

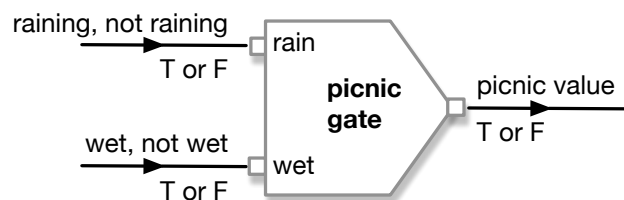


Figure A.2: A fake “picnic gate” machine that does the work of Table ??

4492

4493 The image in this figure is maybe suggestive of digital component representations
4494 which are called “gates.” There are electronic gates for eight functions, which are a

4495 practical expansion of the conjunctives mentioned above. Think about that. The
4496 whole of our digital world can be made with these eight gate functions.

4497 What I wanted to show you is that your entire life now is based the ancient Greek
4498 Logic research program. For example, the 2022 iPhone 14 has 18 billion transistors
4499 in it and every one of them speaks through Aristotle to get their individual jobs
4500 done—or I should say their collective jobs done, since their language is forming
4501 and evaluating billions of logical two-term arguments in the same spirit as our
4502 raining-wet table.

4503 **A.2.3.4 The Punch Line:**

4504 Let's review what just happened:

4505 We've found that Aristotle made a simple but profound discovery, namely that
4506 one could take a sentence, like "Fire engines are red or yellow" and turn it into
4507 essentially a mathematical statement, like "A are B or C" and then draw general
4508 conclusions about the combinations of general statements that don't involve the
4509 details. That sentence involving A, B, and C could also be a representation of the
4510 sentence, "All squirrels are either black or brown." This allowed him to then create
4511 a system of rules that could guarantee the validity of arguments, which, after all,
4512 are combinations of sentences.

4513 The first kind of argument is now called the "categorical syllogism," and involves
4514 three variables and, like fire engines and squirrels, can be specific or more usefully,
4515 general, like:

All men are mortal.	A are B
Socrates is a man.	C is A
Therefore, Socrates is mortal	therefore, C is B

4516

4517 This evolved quickly into a rules guaranteeing validity of conclusions from a differ-
4518 ent form of argument involving two variables (an "hypothetical syllogism"):

If all men are mortal, then Socrates is a mortal	If A, then B.
All men are mortal	A is true.
Therefore, Socrates is mortal	therefore, B is true.

4519

4520 In fact there are variety of valid forms for each sort of argument but what's interest-
4521 ing in the second sort is that the truth value of arguments involving two variables
4522 can actually be created using electronic circuits using tables ("truth tables") of the
4523 different logical outcomes of the truth or falsity of the premises in an hypothetical
4524 syllogism. This was realized in 1938, built into vacuum tube circuits in the 1940's,
4525 and transistor digital electronics in the 1960's.

4526 The first digital computers relied on thousands of vacuum tubes and filled whole
 4527 rooms with hot, clunky racks of tubes and wires—your phone has 10s of thousands
 4528 of times more processing power than these first early 1950s computers. When the
 transistor became commercially viable in the 1960s the digital world came alive.

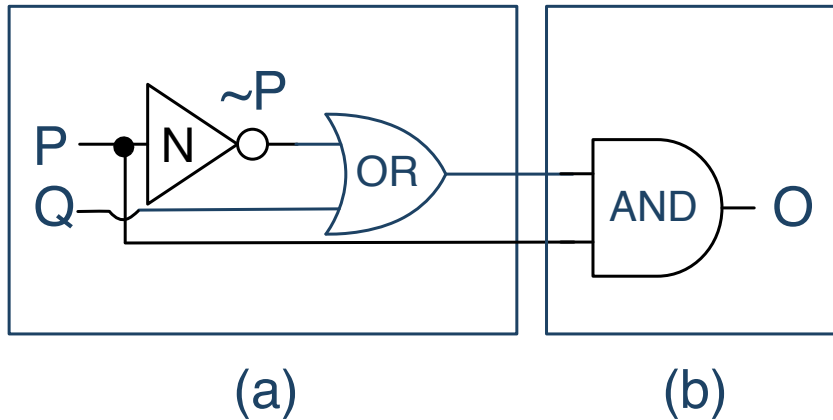


Figure A.3: (a) and (c) are the transistor-equivalents of the two logic gates, NOR and OR in (b) and (d). The little circuit to evaluate rain causing wetness...or not...is shown in (e).

4529

4530 In the spirit of overview, Figure ?? shows two transistor arrangements and their
 4531 modern “gate” symbol—please don’t worry about the details! Just for flavor. (a)
 4532 is the layout for a common transistor package that does the job of the logical gate
 4533 symbol shown in (b). It’s the NOR operation. A comes in, and NOT-A comes
 4534 out. (c) is another transistor layout that has two inputs and produces the logical
 4535 OR combination, and (d) is the logical gate symbol for performing that operation.
 4536 Finally, (e) is the digital gate solution for the Conditional argument from Table
 4537 ??—it’s a real-life engineering representation of the fake “picnic gate” in Figure ??.

4538 With binary arithmetic, gates can be combined to do arithmetic functions, logical
 4539 functions, and importantly, storage of bits. Digital memory consists of four so-
 4540 called NAND gates, and so four transistors and is the basic cell of a computer 1-bit
 4541 memory. It’s a clever implementation of an input bit—to be stored—and an enable
 4542 bit—which allows the output to change or not change.

4543 All of these—and more—transistor components are actually imprinted in tiny
 4544 silicon wafers in which a single transistor package might be only 20 nanometers
 4545 in size. With the logical functions and the manufacturing techniques of today, my
 4546 current Apple Watch has 32GB of random access memory (RAM) and so it can
 4547 manage 32,000,000,000 Bytes of information, which is 25,6000,000,000 bits and so
 4548 102,400,000,000 individual transistors are inside my watch, just for the memory! The
 4549 CPU and control circuitry would add millions of additional imprinted transistors
 4550 and their gate-equivalents. All on m

4551 **A.2.4 Digital Gates**

4552 One more bit of insight makes really complicated electronic digital design possible
 4553 and came from the very strange, yet enormously influential philosopher **Ludwig**
 4554 **Wittgenstein** (1889-1951) who invented the concept of the “truth table,” which
 4555 we’ve already used in Table ?? . It’s an orderly setup of all possible starting places
 4556 (for two valued propositions) and their results when various operations are applied.
 4557 Let’s look at a three. True now is the bit 1 and False is the bit 0:

- 4558 • The NOT operation: If I have an A then NOT-A creates the opposite of A.
 4559 If we work in the zeros and ones world, then if A=1, then NOT-A = 0. The
 4560 symbol for NOT is usually $\bar{}$ so if A = 1, then $\bar{A} = 0$. (The $\bar{}$ symbol is the
 4561 common notation used by logicians. Engineers and physicists would write \bar{A}
 4562 to represent the result of NOT-A.)
- 4563 • The AND operation: This is between two states of, say, our A and B. In
 4564 order for A AND B to be true, both A and B must be true—1— themselves.
 4565 Otherwise, A AND B is false, or 0. The symbol for AND is \wedge So A AND B = A
 4566 \wedge B.
- 4567 • The OR operation: This is the combination that says A OR B is true if either A
 4568 = 1 or B = 1 and false otherwise. The symbol for OR is \vee .

4569 There are 5 other logical combinations. Table ?? shows the truth table for AND and
 4570 for OR. In the first set, the AND process, I’ve stuck to our T and F language, but the
 4571 rest uses the zeros and ones language of engineering and binary arithmetic.

Table A.5: Truth tables for the AND and OR functions plus the construction of Modus Ponens. The symbol for AND is \wedge , the symbol for OR is \vee , and the symbol for NOT (negate) is $\bar{}$. Notice that $(\bar{A}) \vee B$ is a construction out of AND and NOT of the conditional that’s the first premise of Modus Ponens.

AND			OR			Combined function				=
A	B	$A \wedge B$	A	B	$A \vee B$	A	B	A	$(\bar{A}) \vee B$	If A then B
T	T	T	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	= 1
T	F	F	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	= 0
F	T	F	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	= 1
F	F	F	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	= 1

4572 Let’s look at the first line so that you get the idea.

4573 For AND:

- 4574 • A is T and B is T and the AND of two T’s is itself a T.

4575 For OR:

4576 • A= 1 and B = 1 and the OR of $1 \vee 1$ is 1.

4577 Then the combination:

4578 • repeating the A and B conditions from the first and second columns A= 1 and
4579 B = 1.

4580 • taking the NOT of A, takes 1 into 0.

4581 • combining that with the B in an OR results in $A \vee B = 0 \vee 1 = 1$

4582 The last column shows that this is the same as the first line result of our picnic
4583 decision making in Table ???. The rest of Table ??? builds that combination for all
4584 possible A and B states, first by negating A and then combining that by “ORing” it
4585 with B. The last column shows the original “If A then B” premise that we worked
4586 out about raining and wetness. They formula and our reasoning lead to identical
4587 conclusions.

4588 A.3 Greek Astronomy Technical Appendix

4589 A.3.1 Plato’s Timaeus Cosmology—The Numerology

4590 “And he began the division in this way. First he took **one portion**
4591 from the whole, and next a **portion double of this**; the **third half as much again as**
4592 **the second**, and **three times the first**; the **fourth double of the second**; the **fifth three**
4593 **times the third**; the **sixth eight times the first**; and the **seventh twenty-seven times**
4594 **the first**. Next, he went on to fill up both the double and the triple intervals, cutting
4595 off yet more parts from the original mixture and placing them between the terms, so
4596 that within each interval there were two means, the one (harmonic) exceeding the
4597 one extreme and being exceeded by the other by the same fraction of the extremes,
4598 the other (arithmetic) exceeding the one extreme by the same number whereby it was
4599 exceeded by the other.” Plato, **Republic**

4600 Okay the numbers seem arbitrary. But there’s an algorithm:

- 4601 • one portion of the whole: ○, 1
- 4602 • double of this: ○○, 2
- 4603 • half as much again: ○○○, 3
- 4604 • double of the second: ○○○○, 4
- 4605 • three times the third: ○○○○○○○○, 9
- 4606 • eight times the first: ○○○○○○○○, 8
- 4607 • twenty-seven times the first: ○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○○, 27

4608 Now manipulate:

- 4609 • The first four are the famous 1,2,3,4 and since they’re the special numbers,
4610 they have a job to do:

4611 – Square each of the first numbers—remember, 1 is not a number— (Greeks
4612 knew how to multiply): and you get 4 and 9.

4613 – Cube those same first two important numbers: and you get 8 and 27.

4614 So all of the numbers in that excerpt are some manipulation of the numbers 2 and
4615 3—he stopped at 3 because there are only three dimensions. Collecting all of the
4616 numbers, but now into even and odd strings (remember, 1 is neither even nor odd
4617 for Pythagoreans and apparently also, for Plato):

4618 Then, Timaeus says that if you take the number strings you actually construct the
4619 intervals of the diatonic musical scale. More Music of the Spheres. Whew. Wait
4620 until we get to Kepler.

- 4621 **A.3.2** Some Aristarchus Measurements
- 4622 **A.4** Medieval Technical Appendix
- 4623 **A.5** Copernicus Technical Appendix
- 4624 **A.6** Brahe-Kepler Technical Appendix
- 4625 **A.7** Gilbert Technical Appendix
- 4626 **A.8** Galileo Technical Appendix
- 4627 **A.9** Descartes Technical Appendix
- 4628 **A.10** Brahe-Kepler Technical Appendix
- 4629 **A.11** Huygens Technical Appendix
- 4630 **A.12** Newton Technical Appendix
- 4631 **A.13** Young Technical Appendix
- 4632 **A.14** Faraday Technical Appendix
- 4633 **A.15** Maxwell Technical Appendix
- 4634 **A.16** Michelson Technical Appendix
- 4635 **A.17** Thomson Technical Appendix
- 4636 **A.18** Lorentz Technical Appendix
- 4637 **A.19** Einstein Technical Appendix